Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

AMRITPAL SINGH SAROYA
Herbal Consultant
Punjab
India
Foreword

It is indeed an honour to be invited to write the Foreword for book titled 'Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology' with its twin lofty motto both to educate and to provide much needed scientific validation to herbal medicine.

The author has achieved in this book the multi-faceted objectives of emerging herbal science which is a blend of ancient knowledge coupled with scientific proofs. When I received an invitation from the author to write the Foreword to the book I was somewhat puzzled by the invitation. After all, during the past one decade, my work has focused upon the pharmacological aspects of Ayurvedic and herbal medicine. I have coauthored a number of research and review papers along with the author detailing herbal medicine and ethnopharmacology. And prior to that, my original scientific training and qualifications were as pharmacologist, rather than Herbal Medicine.

The scope of this book is truly impressive, reviewing the phytochemical and pharmacological aspects of herbal drugs. The book is thoroughly referenced and illustrates the scientific approach to herbalism. The book is not limited to one class of Complementary and Alternative Medicine but also highlights medicinal applications of lesser known systems like Amchi. The book clearly warrants application of algae, fungi and mosses in drug discovery. This book was need of the hour to provide clarifications regarding issues related to herbalism.

Herbalism and traditional medicine are backbone of the modern pharmaceutical industry. In China and Western countries, herbal medicine has come into the limelight because of advancement in research and development. Taxol (Taxus brevifolia), Silymarin (Silybum marianum), Artemisinin (Artemisia annua) are some reputed drugs in synthetic system of medicine. All the three drugs owe their origin to plants. We need to explore other systems of Complementary and Alternative Medicine such as Ayurveda, Siddha, Unani, Homeopathy and Amchi for more potent and life saving drugs. I believe that this book should be of great help to people concerned about the value of herbalism in future healthcare.

Dr. Samir Malhotra
Associate Professor, Dept of Pharmacology
Postgraduate Institute of Medical Sciences and Research
Chandigarh
Preface

This book has been written with the primary objective of providing scientific footage to medical herbalism. With advancement of our knowledge of the subject, a large number of texts have appeared which are useful in their own way but do not fully meet the interdisciplinary nature of herbalism. Herbalism coupled with phytochemistry and ethnopharmacology is a powerful tool for drug discovery.

The present treatise has been presented in a simple and lucid style so that a student who has even a limited knowledge of herbalism can understand the phytochemical and pharmacological aspects of herbalism. A simple, clear, well illustrated and a concise account of phytochemicals and experimental pharmacology has been presented. An introductory chapter in the beginning of the text is meant to acquaint the students with a general outline of various issues related to herbalism. Another objective has been to present the entire subject matter in light of new advancements in herbal drug discovery.

The book is primarily meant for students of phytochemistry, ethnopharmacology, phytotherapy and medicinal plants. For the benefit of the readers, concise information in form of tables has been included. Each chapter contains a complete bibliography which may particularly benefit postgraduate and research-oriented students and teachers.

It is certainly not possible to consider all aspects of herbalism in a single book, especially when there are genuine limitations such as lack of standardization and awareness. No originality is claimed in the preparation of this book. It is simply a compilation of work done in a manner so as to meet the needs of the students of herbalism and related subjects. A large of standard books on the subject and research journals have been consulted. I am also greatly indebted to all eminent herbal scientists of the world for sending me copies of original papers.

During the three-year period that this book passed through the different stages of preparation and production, I perforce ignored my family. For all kinds of personal help rendered to me by my parents and wife, I have no words to express my feelings. Special thanks is due to my pretty daughter Seerat Kaur for tolerating my whims and moods while working for the project. My heartiest thanks to Dr. Bhupinder Singh Bhoop,
Professor (Pharmaceutics & Pharmacokinetics), University Institute of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Punjab University, Chandigarh and Dr. Samir Malhotra, Associate Professor (Pharmacology), Postgraduate Institute of Medical Sciences and Research, Chandigarh for providing the stimulus to achieve this ambitious project.

Finally, I wish to express my thanks to my publishers for providing me the facilities in the publication of the book. Constructive suggestions from readers, for the improvement of possible future editions of the book, shall be gratefully acknowledged.

September 2010

Amritpal Singh
Contents

Foreword v
Preface vii

1. Herbal Drug Industry 1
2. Reverse Pharmacology 18
3. Ethnopharmacology 26
4. Medicinal Phytochemistry 33
5. Phytochemicals 36
7. Therapeutic Utility of Ayurveda 251
8. Amchi System of Medicine 263
9. Ethnopharmacology of Algae 268
10. Ethnopharmacology of Lichens 277
11. Ethnopharmacology of Bryophytes 286
12. Ethnopharmacology of Anthelmintic Ferns 294
13. Ethnopharmacology of Medicinal Orchids 300
14. Salacia sp. Potential Hypoglycemic Plants 312
15. Ethnopharmacology of Taraxacum officinale Weber 323
16. Ethnopharmacology of Acanthus ilicifolius Linn. 336
17. Ethnopharmacology of Alstonia macrophylla ex A. DC 341
18. Ethnopharmacology of Alstonia venenata R. Br 351
19. Ethnopharmacology of Holoptelea integrifolia Planch. 353
20. Ethnopharmacology of Terminalia belerica (Gaertn.) Roxb 357
21. Ethnopharmacology of Nardostachys jatamansi DC. 362
22. Ethnopharmacology of Eclipta alba Linn. 368
23. Ethnopharmacology of Cassia siamea Lam. 376
24. Ethnopharmacology of Tylophora asthmatica Wight & Arn. 384
25. Colchicine Containing Medicinal Herbs 390
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Lakshmana-Ayurvedic Drug of Controversial Origin</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Antidiabetic Potential of <em>Pterocarpus marsupium</em></td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Color Plate Section</em></td>
<td>427</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1

Herbal Drug Industry

1.1 Introduction

A considerable number of definitions have been proposed for the term ‘medicinal plant’. According to the World Health Organization, “a medicinal plant is any plant which, in one or more of its organs, contains substances that can be used for therapeutic purposes, or which are precursors for chemopharmaceutical semi synthesis”.

This definition distinguishes between the already known medicinal plants whose therapeutic properties or characters are precursors of certain molecules which have been established scientifically, with that of other plants used in traditional medicine which are regarded as medicinal, but have not yet been subjected to a thorough scientific study.

Medicinal plants are a significant source of synthetic and herbal drugs. Patterns of herbal utilization are depicted in Fig. 1.1 Medicinal plants have been used for the treatment of diseases since antiquity. According to Alves and Rosa (2007), 20,000 plant species are used for medicinal purposes. India and China have been on the forefront when one refers to the history of herbal drugs. The traditional systems of medicines viz. Ayurveda, Siddha, Unani, Western Herbal Medicine, Traditional Chinese Medicine and Homeopathy have roots in medicinal herbs. Herbal medicines have been produced by a number of renowned researchers and due to its accessibility to traditions it is still practiced even by lay practitioners.

Ayurveda, the ancient healing system flourished in India in the Vedic era. The classical texts of Ayurveda, Charaka Samhita and Sushruta Samhita were written around 1000 B.C. The Ayurvedic Materia Medica includes 600 medicinal plants along with therapeutics. Herbs like turmeric, fenugreek, ginger, garlic and holy basil are integral parts of Ayurvedic formulations. The formulations incorporate a single herb or more than two herbs (polyherbal formulations).

The history of traditional Chinese medicine is renowned and the herbal system, is very well preserved. It originated about 3000 years ago
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

and is a popular science in western countries. Some of the medicinal herbs mentioned in Chinese medicine are common to Ayurveda. Traditional Chinese medicine favors the use of medicinal herbs in their natural form rather than by extraction. Herbal drugs have a different history in Europe and America and have produced healers like Culpeper. The use of tinctures in homeopathy is based on medicinal herbs.

Before the availability of synthetic drugs, man was completely dependent on medicinal herbs for prevention and treatment of diseases. The use of the medicinal herbs for curing diseases has been documented in the history of all civilizations. The drugs were used in crude forms like expressed juice, powder, decoction or infusion. Although the formulations mentioned in ancient texts are difficult to understand in terms of scientific parameters, some of them are reputed for their curative values. The Napralert database at the University of Illinois establishes ethno medicinal uses for about 9200 of the 33,000 species of monocotyledons, dicotyledons, gymnosperms, lichens, pteridophytes, and bryophytes.

Ancient healers, who developed formulations based on medicinal herbs, were probably not aware of the chemical composition of the herbs. However the advances they made despite the non-availability of scientific procedures is astonishing. The work on *Terminalia chebula* (chebulic myrobalan) mentioned in Charaka Samhita is quite authentic and modern studies have revealed that the purgative activity mentioned in Ayurveda is justified by the isolation of chebulic acid, the active constituent of chebulic myrobalan.

Initially, the term Materia Medica was coined for the study of natural products. Materia Medica is defined as the knowledge of natural history, physical characteristics, and chemical properties of drugs. It includes

---

**Fig. 1.1 Patterns of herbal utilization.**

*Source: Riewpaiboon (2003).*
the study of herbs, minerals and drugs from the animal kingdom. The Ayurvedic equivalent for Materia Medica is Dravyaguna, which is the study of medicinal herbs in Ayurvedic terms. Nowadays the term ‘Materia Medica’ is known as pharmacognosy.

1.2 Phytomedicines and Herbal Extracts

A medicinal herb is considered to be a chemical factory as it contains a multitude of chemical compounds like alkaloids, glycosides, saponins, resins, oleoresins, sesquiterpene lactones and oils (essential and fixed). Some rare compounds like furanocoumarins, hydroxycoumarins, naphthoquinones, acylphloroglucinols and sterones are also distributed among the plant kingdom. The active constituents are usually secondary metabolites, derived from biosynthetic pathways present within the plant tissue. In 1985 it was recorded that 74% of the 119 plant derived drugs were discovered as a result of chemical studies to isolate the active substances responsible for their traditional use.

Plants are used in different forms varying from powders to extracts. Powder represents the drug in the ground form and these types of preparations are considered to be crude. The Pharmacopoeia mentions standardized vegetable powders for therapeutic application. Herbal systems of medicine have become increasingly popular in recent years. In light of the growing demand of herbal drugs, quality control and assurance is primarily important. The standardized herbal extracts are considered to be more scientific than crude drugs. The commonly employed technique for removal of the active substance from the crude drug is called extraction. Selection of the solvent is very critical in preparing the extracts, because the active constituent of the plants have an affinity for solvents.

1. Water and petroleum ether are used for extraction of fixed and essential oils and sterones.
2. Chloroform and ether are used for extraction of alkaloids.
3. Water and alcohol are used for extraction of glycosides.
4. Tannins and phenols are extracted with alcohol and ethyl acetate.

Extracts are prepared by separating the soluble matter from vegetable tissues by application of a suitable solvent like alcohol, water or ether. The resultant liquid is concentrated by evaporation to obtain a liquid extract or concentrated almost to dryness to obtain the solid extract. Depending on the solvent used, the extracts are classified as alcoholic, ethereal or aqueous.

The standardized herbal extract is a preparation, which contains a certain fixed proportion of the active constituent (Table 1.1). Although the most obvious aspect of standardization is the guaranteed content of
herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

one or more active constituents or marker compounds, standardization involves much more than guaranteed levels of constituents. For example, a standardized extract of *Papaver somniferum* contains not less than 9.5% of morphine. Standardization has a great impact on the quality of herbal products. Standardization helps in adjusting the herbal drug formulation to a defined content of a constituent or constituents with therapeutic activity.

**Table 1.1** Constituents with known activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extract</th>
<th>Constituent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Aesculus hippocastanum</em></td>
<td>Escin (s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Atropa belladona</em></td>
<td>L-Hyoscyamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cassia angustifolia/acutifolia</em></td>
<td>Sennosides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Piper methysticum</em></td>
<td>Kava-pyrones (mixture of six)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Silybum marianum</em></td>
<td>Silymarin (mixture of six)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The biological source of a drug has great impact on finished products in herbal drug preparation. Proper identification of the drug is significant for phytochemical screening, which further exerts importance on therapeutic activity of the medicinal herb. Thus presence of the identification standard is necessary in finished products of an herbal drug preparation. A constituent of a medicinal herb, which is used for quality control and assurance of the herbal product, is known as **marker compound** (Table 1.2). A marker compound may or may not have therapeutic activity.

**Table 1.2** Constituents with known activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extract</th>
<th>Constituent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ginkgo biloba</em></td>
<td>Ginkgolides and/or Flavonoid(s) and/or Bilobalide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hypericum perforatum</em></td>
<td>Flavonoids, e.g. Quercetin and/or hypericin and/or Hyperforin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Matricaria chamomilla</em></td>
<td>Flavonoid (s), e.g. Apigenine and/or Chamazulene and/or Levomenthol (α Bisabolol)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Valeriana officinalis</em></td>
<td>Valerenic acid and/or Hydroxy-valerenic acid and/or Acetoxy-valerenic acid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Advantages of standardized extracts**

Standardized extracts retain the chemical complexity typical of the natural plant, but offer the added advantage of guaranteed levels of certain key constituents. An increasing number of botanical medicines have had their
clinical efficacy confirmed in clinical trials. The vast majority of clinical trials involving botanical medicines have used standardized extracts. The reason is simple: standardized extracts offer consistent and reproducible therapeutic effects and the highest degree of safety. Accordingly, standardized extracts produce the best clinical results.

**Why standardization?**

As botanical extracts are made directly from crude plant material, they can show very substantial variation in composition, quality, and therapeutic effects. The variation and diversity of life is enormous, even within a species. In other words, two medicinal plants of the same species may look similar, yet be substantially different in the levels of active constituents that they contain. Botanical medicines made from plants that differ markedly in their chemical constituents cannot produce the same therapeutic effects. Since the practitioner or consumer will be unable to assess the difference, they cannot compensate for it.

The consequence will be inconsistent clinical results.

**Standardized extracts are:**

- High quality extracts containing consistent levels of specified compounds
- Broad spectrum extracts containing recognized active constituents as well as a variety of other plant constituents (some of which may contribute to the overall therapeutic quality of the extract)
- Extracts subjected to rigorous quality controls during all phases of the growing, harvesting and manufacturing processes.

**Clinical advantages:**

- High quality extracts with consistent activity
- Consistent activity allows for more accurate prescribing
- Consistent activity allows for consistent clinical results
- Extensive quality control ensures the quality and safety of standardized extracts

**Quality control ensures:**

- That the correct botanical species is used
- That only high quality raw materials are used
- That no other plant material has been used
- That the plant material is not contaminated with pesticides, heavy metals, or other noxious agents, that the final extract complies with international limits for microbial content and that the final product is of a consistent high standard preparation.
Commonly used herbal extracts are listed in the Table 1.3.

**Table 1.3** List of standardized herbal extracts prepared from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. No</th>
<th>Medicinal Herb</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Achellia millefolium</td>
<td>Essential oil</td>
<td>0.04%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Adhatoda vasica</td>
<td>Vasicine</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Allium sativum</td>
<td>Allicin</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
<td>Andrographolide</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Arctostaphylos uva-ursi</td>
<td>Arbutin</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Asparagus racemosus</td>
<td>Saponin</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Azadirachta indica</td>
<td>Azadiractin</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Bacopa monnieri</td>
<td>Bacoside</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Betula alba</td>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>1.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Boswellia serrata</td>
<td>Boswellic Acid.</td>
<td>40% &amp; 70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Camellia sinensis</td>
<td>Epigallocatechin Gallate</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Capsicum frutescens</td>
<td>Capsaicinoids</td>
<td>0.62%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Centella asiatica</td>
<td>Asiaticoside</td>
<td>3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Chalcolella emersoni</td>
<td>Chlorophyll</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Cimicifuga racemosa</td>
<td>Triterpenoid glycosides</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Coleus forskohlii</td>
<td>Forskohlin</td>
<td>10%–20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Commiphora mukal</td>
<td>Guggulsterones</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Crataegus oxyacanthus</td>
<td>Vitexin</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Curcuma longa</td>
<td>Curcumin</td>
<td>95%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Cynara scolymus</td>
<td>Cynarin</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Echinacea angustifolia</td>
<td>Echinacosides</td>
<td>4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Echinacea purpurea</td>
<td>Cichoric acid</td>
<td>4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Embelia ribes</td>
<td>Embelin</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Ephedra sinica</td>
<td>Ephedrine</td>
<td>6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Equisetum arvense</td>
<td>Silicon dioxide</td>
<td>7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Eschscholtzia californica</td>
<td>Protopine</td>
<td>0.20–0.24%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Filipendula ulmaria</td>
<td>Salicylic acid</td>
<td>0.20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Garcinia cambogia</td>
<td>Hydroxy Cirtic Acid</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Flavonoglycosides</td>
<td>24%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Glycyrrhiza glabra</td>
<td>Glycyrrhizin</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Gymnema sylvestre</td>
<td>Gymnemic Acid</td>
<td>75%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Hamamelis virginiana</td>
<td>Tannins</td>
<td>8–12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Harpagophyllum procumbens</td>
<td>Harpagoside</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Huperzia serrata</td>
<td>Huperzine</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Hydrastis canadensis</td>
<td>Alkaloids</td>
<td>3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Hypericum perforatum</td>
<td>Hypericin</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Malpighia glabra</td>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>2.5–25%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 1.3 contd...*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. No</th>
<th>Medicinal Herb</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Matricaria chamomilla</td>
<td>Apigenin</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Matricaria recutita</td>
<td>Apigenin</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Melissa officinalis</td>
<td>Rosmarinic acid</td>
<td>4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Momordica Charantia</td>
<td>Bitters</td>
<td>3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Myrciaria dubis</td>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>5–10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Ocimum Sanactum</td>
<td>Ursolic Acid</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Olea europaea</td>
<td>Oleuropein</td>
<td>18%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Orthosiphon staminens</td>
<td>Sinensetin</td>
<td>0.20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Passiflora incarnata</td>
<td>Vitexin</td>
<td>4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Paulinia cupana</td>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>5–22%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Perilla frutescens</td>
<td>Polyphenols</td>
<td>3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Peumus boldus</td>
<td>Boldine</td>
<td>0.05%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Phyllanthus niruri</td>
<td>Bitters</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Picrorhiza kurroa</td>
<td>Kutkosides</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Piper methysticum</td>
<td>Kavalactones</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Pueraria lobata</td>
<td>Daizdein</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Pueraria tuberosa</td>
<td>Disogenin</td>
<td>7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Rhamnus frangula</td>
<td>Frangulin</td>
<td>10–20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Rhamnus purshiana</td>
<td>Cascaroside A</td>
<td>18–22%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Ruscus aculeatus</td>
<td>Saponins (Ruscogenins)</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Salix tetrasperma</td>
<td>Salicin</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Sambucus nigra</td>
<td>Flavonoids</td>
<td>3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Saraca indica</td>
<td>Tannins</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Sereno repens</td>
<td>Fatty acids</td>
<td>20–25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Sida cordifolia</td>
<td>Phenylpropanolamine</td>
<td>0.02%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Silybum marianum</td>
<td>Silymarin</td>
<td>70%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Spirulina maxima</td>
<td>Phycocyanin</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Terminalia arjuna</td>
<td>Tannins</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Terminalia bellerica</td>
<td>Tannins</td>
<td>40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Terminalia chebula</td>
<td>Tannins</td>
<td>60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Tribulus terrestris</td>
<td>Saponin</td>
<td>20% &amp; 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Trigonella foenum graecum</td>
<td>Saponin</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Uncaria tomentosa</td>
<td>Saponin</td>
<td>2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Urtica dioica</td>
<td>ß-sitosterol</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Vaccinium myrtillus</td>
<td>Anthocyanosides</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>Valeriana officinalis</td>
<td>Valerenc acid</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Vitex agnus castus</td>
<td>Aucubin</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Withania somnifera</td>
<td>Withanolides</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Zingiber officinale</td>
<td>Gingerols</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.3 Markets and Marketing Issues

Herbal medicine and natural pharmaceuticals are moving from the fringe to mainstream, with a larger number of people seeking remedies and health approaches free of the side-effects caused by synthesized chemicals (Fig. 1.2). This was considered one of the most vital and high growth industries of the 90s and is set to expand even further into the next century.

The increasing acceptance of herbal medicines in Australia is well supported by trends around the world. In Germany and France which together represent 39% of the $14 billion global retail market, herbal remedies known as phytotherapeutics are well established, and the cost for therapeutic use is covered by health insurance systems, and the quality criteria applied to regulation and manufacturing are comparable to those for chemical drugs.

The crude botanical raw materials for this industry have been grown for long and traded in many countries around the world. As the Australian market for herbal medicine develops, opportunities are arising for raw materials to be grown in Australia, both for local and export markets. Access to export markets may be facilitated by the ‘clean green’ image that Australian agriculture presents to the world.

Botanical raw materials are comprised of dried plant materials in the form of roots, barks, herbs, flowers, fruits, seeds, and resins. These materials are traded in a whole form or, more commonly, are cut and sifted to a consistently even particle size. Market prices for raw botanical

![Diagram of Herbal Drug Market](image)

*Fig. 1.2 Herbal drug market.*

materials are usually determined by supply and demand, but generally tend to be stable.

At least 25% of medical prescriptions in recent times contain one active compound from plant species, Duke (1990) estimated that the value of drugs containing compounds from plant species is about US$ 10 billion in the United States alone (see Table 1.1). Most traded European materials are priced at source in the range of $2.00 to $6.00/kg. Prices for certified organic produce can be anywhere between $10.00 and $30.00/kg. This supply market is very limited, hence the high prices. Prices for difficult-to-grow, wild-harvested, or certified organic materials, usually North American botanicals, can range in price from $20.00 to $120.00/kg (Table 1.4).

Table 1.4 World market for flavor and fragrances (US$ m in 1990).

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flavours</td>
<td>2300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fragrances</td>
<td>2400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential oils &amp; other</td>
<td>1050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural extracts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synthetic aroma chemicals</td>
<td>1100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The principal primary market for these raw materials is to industries that manufacture:

- Essential oils (Table 1.5)
- Liquid extracts and tinctures
- Herbal teas
- Concentrated soft extracts (for further industrial application)
- Concentrated dry extracts (for further industrial application)
- Plant-derived pure pharmaceutical drugs.

The pharmaceutical industry is both large and highly successful. Sales of plant derived drugs reached $30 billion worldwide in 2002. At present about 50% of the total plant-derived drug sales come from single entities, while the remaining 50% come from herbal remedies. Although the latter have greater volumes of consumption, the relatively low volumes of single entities, which are mostly prescription products, are more than compensated by their higher prices.

Single entity plant drugs, which mostly treat serious medical ills, include atropine, digoxin, morphine, paclitaxel, pilocarpine, reserpine, scopolamine, topotecan and vincristine, among many others. Several of the compounds have outlived their usefulness in light of better alternatives, and are exhibiting a decline in sales. On the other hand, as a consequence of new drug developments, single entities overall are projected to increase their market share of the combined total future dollar sales.
Sales of these plant-based drugs in the U.S. amounted to some US$4.5 billion in 1980 and an estimated US$15.5 billion in 1990. Other drugs are derived from animals and microorganisms. Development of drugs from plants is a long and arduous process which involves many disciplines. It has been estimated that only 5 to 15% of the approximately 250,000 species of higher plants have been systematically investigated for the presence of bioactive compounds. In industrialized countries, substances in everyday use derived from plants are -digitalin, ephedrine, morphine, quinine and many more. While the ones used less often like reserpine, guggulipid and artemisinin are equally well known.

All 119 plant-derived drugs used worldwide in 1991 came from fewer than 90 of the 250,000 plant species that have been identified. “Each such plant is a unique chemical factory”, according to Norman R. Farnsworth of the University of Illinois at Chicago, “capable of synthesizing unlimited numbers of highly complex and unusual chemical substances whose structures could (otherwise) escape the imagination... forever”.

In other words, scientists may be able to synthesize these plant compounds in the laboratory. Commercially, these plant derived medicines are worth about US$14 billion a year in the United States and US$40 billion worldwide.

In 1990s, the U.S. National Institute earmarked US$8 million to screen 50,000 natural substances for activity against 100 cancer cell lines and the AIDS virus. China, Germany, India, and Japan, among others, are also screening wild species for new drugs.

The European market for herbal supplements is estimated at over US$ 2.7 billion and for herbal remedies, a further US$ 0.9 billion. Germany is by far the largest market. The market is growing rapidly at over 4% per annum for herbal remedies and considerably faster for herbal supplements. The US herbal market is nearing saturation and is expected to peak at US$ 6–8 billion in the next few years.

### Table 1.5 Some major essential oils and their compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Angelica</td>
<td>Alpha-Pinene, Limonene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clove leaf</td>
<td>Eugenol, Caryophylene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citronella</td>
<td>Geraniol, Citronellol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eucalyptus</td>
<td>Cineol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavender</td>
<td>Linalylacetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon grass</td>
<td>Citral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lemon</td>
<td>Limonene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>Menthol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spearmint</td>
<td>Carvone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Their dietary herbal supplement market is estimated at US$4 billion and has been growing at 6-8% per annum. The main producers are manufacturers based in the developed countries, including the large multinational pharmaceutical companies. There are also smaller companies that specialize in herbal products and some have emerged to challenge the multinationals for market leadership in this field.

The main products sold are based on plants such as Echinacea and St. John’s Wort that were known for their medicinal properties in the consuming countries. Recent research has helped propel the knowledge of other plants from around the world and this has helped accelerate the development of new supplements and medicines. The market share of herbal products made in developing countries remains comparatively low.

Chinese products, mainly in herbal supplements, have achieved major successes. The EU and the US regulations have special provision for herbal medicines that do not use mixtures of herbs. In this respect their regulations are, comparatively, relaxed. But if the exported products contain herbal mixtures and claim curative properties, the rules become much stricter. For medicines, product trials need to be carried out that cost several millions of dollars.

Scientific knowledge of the products produced in the developing countries, and of their systems of traditional medicine, is limited and this also restricts the market for their herbal products. As markets grow, the search for a wider variety of ingredients is increasing. Phytomedicines have already started to link traditional medicines with modern (allopathic) medicine, with research and development primarily funded by large pharmaceutical manufacturers.

Demand for medicinal plants is expected to continue to expand rapidly, fuelled by the growth of sales of herbal supplements and remedies. Their

---

Table 1.6 Synthetic vs. phytomedicines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Synthetic</th>
<th>Phytomedicine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>Usually simple</td>
<td>Usually complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Target</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Usually complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Affinity</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Potency</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Incidence of side effects</td>
<td>Higher, often unpredictable</td>
<td>Lower, usually predictable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Drastic changes in physiological events</td>
<td>Restore physiological balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>In vitro test</td>
<td>Often adequate</td>
<td>Inadequate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Patents</td>
<td>Easy</td>
<td>Difficult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

basic uses in medicine will continue in the future, as a source of therapeutic
agents, and as a raw material base for the extraction of semi-synthetic
chemical compounds such as cosmetics, perfumes and food industries.

1.4 Medicinal plant analysis: HPLC

High performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) is a highly selective
chemical analytical technique, which is suitable for the analysis of a range
of plant materials and botanical extracts. HPLC provides both qualitative
information about the composition of the sample and quantitative data
about the amount present of each constituent.

Although HPLC is a sophisticated analytical technique requiring
expensive technology, the method is based on the same simple principles as
other types of chromatography. A high performance liquid chromatograph
contains a narrow stainless steel column. This column is packed with a
material (usually fine silica particles) that selectively absorbs molecules on
the basis of some difference in their chemical structure.

Due to the differential retention of individual molecules traveling
through the column, compounds in a sample are separated. Compounds
that are absorbed weakly or not at all have the shortest retention time and
will exit the column first.

Compounds that are absorbed more strongly have longer retention
times and will exit the column more slowly.

As the individual constituents of the sample exit the column, they are
monitored by a detection device, which is linked to a printer. Each peak
in the chromatogram represents a chemical compound, and the height of
the peak is proportional to the concentration of that particular compound
in the sample.

High performance liquid chromatography is carried out under high
pressure and is therefore much faster than most other chromatography
techniques. By way of comparing HPLC ‘fingerprints’ with reference
standards, plant material and botanical extracts can be identified
unequivocally. However, HPLC also provides detailed information about
the composition of the sample.

HPLC is therefore widely used in the quality control of standardized
botanical extracts, to ensure the presence of key constituents in specified
amounts. The figure below shows a three-dimensional HPLC chromatogram
of the silymarin extract from milk thistle (Silybum marianum).

The vertical axis shows the concentration, the horizontal axis is the
retention time in minutes, and the third axis shows the wavelengths of
detection. The group of peaks visible between 12.5 and 17.5 min (the
peaks in the right-hand part of the chromatogram) represent the silybin-
type compounds: silybin A, silybin B, and isosilybin A/B. Silymarin is
standardized to specified levels of these compounds, and the peaks representing them are validated using reference standards.

The peaks that appear to the left of the silybin peaks represent other constituents of the extract. These are not quantified or validated as part of the standardization process, but they contribute to the total ‘fingerprint’ of silymarin.

The overall HPLC profile is used to monitor individual batches of extract in order to ensure consistent constituent profiles and consistency in therapeutic activity.

1.5 Test Procedures for Herbal Drug Preparations and Products

A specification is defined as a list of tests, references to analytical and biological procedures, and appropriate acceptance criteria, which are numerical limits, ranges, or other criteria for the tests described. It establishes the set of criteria to which an herbal drug preparation (herbal drug) or herbal medicinal product should conform to be considered acceptable for its intended use.

The applicant shall not be required to provide the results of trials if he can demonstrate:

**Article 4 No. 8 a) ii**

By detailed reference to published scientific literature that the constituent or constituents of the proprietary medicinal product have a well established medicinal use, with recognized efficacy and an acceptable level of safety.

**Commission directive 1999/83/EC of 8 September 1999**

A. Whereas it is in particular necessary to clarify that ‘bibliographic reference’ to other sources of evidence (post marketing studies, epidemiological studies, studies conducted with similar products). and not just tests and trials may serve as a valid proof of safety and efficacy of a product if an applicant explains and justifies the use of these sources of information satisfactorily.

B. The Expert report must explain the relevance of any data submitted which concern a product different from the product intended for marketing. A judgment must be made whether the product studied can be considered as similar to the product which will be granted a marketing authorization in spite of the existing differences.
Well established use

The Expert report must explain the relevance of any data submitted which concern a product different from the product intended for marketing. A judgment must be made whether the product studied can be considered as similar to the product which will be granted a marketing authorization in spite of the existing differences.

In the case of ‘classical’ herbal drug preparations such as tinctures and extracts described in pharmacopoeias and used for long time, a ‘comprehensive’ specification will not be available from published literature in most cases. For these preparations the starting material and the extraction solvent must be identical. If there are reasons to expect a different pharmacological or toxicological profile, additional data and an update of the specification and/or appropriate data on bioavailability may be necessary.

Aspects of a specification for an extract

The example of Commission E monograph Ginkgo extract (Fig 1.3) is cited here.

Requirements

• Extract (acetone 60%) from dried Ginkgo leaves
• Drug: extract ratio = 35–67: 1 (mean 50: 1)
• 22–27% flavone-glycosides 5–7% terpene lactones (2.8–3.4% Ginkgolides and 2.6–3.2% Bilobalide)
• < 5 ppm Ginkgolic acids

Ginkgolic acids are alkylphenols related to compounds found in poison ivy (*Rhus toxicodendron*). They can cause contact allergy. The German Institute for Drugs and Medicinal Plants has set a maximum limit of 5 parts per dermititis. Ginkgolic acids are primarily found in the seed cover of *Ginkgo biloba* but also occur in small amounts in the leaf. In Germany the two best-selling ginkgo products meet the standard for ginkgolic acid content, as these compounds are eliminated or reduced during the extraction or manufacturing processes. In the United States there is no regulation of ginkgolic acid content of ginkgo preparations at present.

In the case of rapid release herbal medicinal products without constituents with known therapeutic activity, the test for *in-vitro* active ingredient release can be omitted (Fig. 1.4, 1.5).
Fig. 1.3 Specification for Ginkgo extract.

Color image of this figure appears in the color plate section at the end of the book.

Fig. 1.4

Release of Valerenic acids from Valerian root in coated tablets "tea-infusion: ≈100%"

Color image of this figure appears in the color plate section at the end of the book.

Fig. 1.5

Release of Silymarin % of the specified content


Color image of this figure appears in the color plate section at the end of the book.
Bioavailability/bioequivalence

Pharmacokinetic data for complex mixtures, where ‘constituents with known therapeutic activity’ are not established, should not be required (Fig. 1.6). Requirements for pharmacokinetic data should always relate to the Public Health and safety risks associated with the product. When there are safety concerns (e.g. photosensitization in the case of Hypericum perforatum) pharmacokinetic data are useful to provide safety margins. If there is a constituent with known therapeutic activity and a narrow therapeutic range, pharmacokinetic data will be required.

The same principles as defined for pharmacokinetic data shall apply for bioavailability/bioequivalence data. Need to provide bioavailability data for galenic preparations with modified release in view of the difficulty to use bibliographical data in such case (Source: European Medicines Evaluation Agency, London, 2001).

### Bioavailability/Bioequivalence

**Problems/Question**

Bearberry extract (Arctostaphylos uva-ursi, folium)  
active constituents: Arbutin, indication: cystitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time (h)</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>30</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 1.6  
*Color image of this figure appears in the color plate section at the end of the book.*

### References and further reading

Chung B. 2001. Natural Plant Extracts Export Market Opportunities in the USA. Rural Industries Research and Development Corporation, Kingston ACT, Australia.


Rajasekharan PE. 2000. Medicinal plants and the pharmaceutical industry. Indian Institute of Horticultural Research, Bangalore, India.


2.1 Introduction

Reverse pharmacology is the science of integrating documented clinical/experiential hits, into leads by transdisciplinary exploratory studies and further developing these into drug candidates by experimental and clinical research (Figs. 2.1, 2.2).

Fig. 2.1 Drug development with conventional pharmacology.

Fig. 2.2 Drug development with reverse pharmacology.
2.2 Scope

The scope of reverse pharmacology is to understand the mechanisms of action at multiple levels of biological organization and to optimize safety, efficacy and acceptability of the leads in natural products, based on the relevant science.

2.3 Dimensions

* Experiential documentation: Pharmacoepidemiology-standardized formulation with HPLC pattern standardized formulation with HPLC pattern.
* Exploratory human/animal studies exploratory human/animal studies—Relevant models of activity relevant models of activity—
  Human dose determination human dose determination.
* Experimental programs
  - Levels of biological organization.
  - Rapid drug development path.
  - Leads: Comb. Leads: Combinatorial Chemistry & HTPS.

2.4 Examples

* Mucuna pruriens for Parkinson’s disease
* Zingiber officinale for nausea/vomiting
* Picrorhiza kurroa for Hepatitis
* Curcuma longa for Oral Cancer
* Panchavalkal for burns and wounds
* Azadirachta indica for Malaria

**Mucuna pruriens for Parkinson’s disease**

L-dopa content: 2.5g%–12.0g%. Other phytochemicals: mucunain, pruriendine, 5-HTTP, aminoacids, dopaquiones, melanin, alanine, linolenic, methionine, and niacin etc. *M. pruriens* seeds and HP-200 standardized for L-dopa content (3.9–4.2% and 3.0–3.7%, respectively). A study by Vaidya et al., (1978) reported the role of *M. pruriens* in the treatment of Parkinson’s disease (Fig. 2.3).

**Zingiber officinale for nausea/vomiting**

Modern-day uses for ginger in Eastern medicine include the use of the herb to treat nausea (including motion sickness and morning sickness of pregnancy). The main components of ginger are the aromatic essential
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

oils, antioxidants, and the pungent oleo-resin. These aromatic or pungent compounds have been identified as the phenylalkylketones, known as gingerols, shogaols, and zingerone.

Zingerone, diterpenoid constituent of ginger has been shown to have an activity similar to a 5HT3 antagonist, similar to ondesteron and other anti-emetic drugs used as adjuncts to chemotherapy. 5HT3 receptors are found in both the chemoreceptor trigger zone and on the vagal nerve terminals in the intestine. The anti-emetic effects of ginger are due to its local effect on the vagal receptors in the stomach.

A double-blind randomized placebo-controlled trial was carried to investigate the effect of a ginger extract on the symptoms of morning sickness. The participants included 120 women less than 20 wk pregnant, who had experienced morning sickness daily for at least 1 wk and had had no relief of symptoms through dietary changes. Random allocation of 125 mg ginger extract equivalent to 1.5 g of dried ginger or placebo given 4 times per day for 4 d. The nausea experience score was significantly less for the ginger extract group relative to the placebo group after the first day of treatment and this difference was present for each treatment day.

**Azadirachta indica for Malaria**

There are a number of references in classical Ayurvedic texts for neem as an antimalarial agent. Classical formulations for Vishamajwara include Nimbadi Kwath, Amruta Nimba Kwath, Panchatiktaka Ghrita,
and Jwarhara Kwath. Neem is still widely used in India. *In vitro* studies with limonoids isolated from neem extract have shown efficacy against Plasmodium species (Table 2.1). Nimbolide (Fig. 1.2) was identified as an antiplasmodial compound (IC50=0.95 ng ml–1, *P. falciparum* K1). The derivatives nimbinin and geduine (Fig. 2.4) and its dihydro-derivative were also found to be active *in vitro* against Plasmodium parasites with EC50 values from 0.72 to 1.74 lg ml–1.

**Table 2.1** Efficacy of limonoids of neem in Plasmodium species.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limonoid</th>
<th>IC50 (µmol/l)</th>
<th>Falciparum clone</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gedunin</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>W2(CQ-9)</td>
<td>MacKinnon et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gedunin</td>
<td>0.039</td>
<td>D6(CQ-S)</td>
<td>MacKinnon et al., 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nimbinin</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>K1(MDR)</td>
<td>Bray et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nimbolide</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>K1(MDR)</td>
<td>Rochanakij et al., 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nimbin</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>K1(MDR)</td>
<td>Bray et al., 1990</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Fig. 2.4 Antimalarial limonoids of neem.](image-url)
2.5 Reverse pharmacology and Ayurveda

Reverse pharmacology correlates with Ayurvedic drug action. The approach has attracted considerable attention, nationally and internationally. Central Scientific Instrumental Research (CSIR) and Indian Council of Medical Research (ICMR) have done clinical trials with natural products. Moreover, Central Council for Research in Ayurveda and Siddha (CCRAS) has recently adopted the golden triangle approach for some new indications of old drugs, as well as for Ayurveda (Fig. 2.5). The golden triangle approach is a combination of Dravyagunavignyan, systems biology, and reverse pharmacology for the discovery of potent and cost-effective remedies. Dravyaguna deals with the Ayurvedic study of drugs derived from natural (plant, animal or marine) origin. Dravya refers to constituent of the universe and guna signifies property. In the recent past, the study of Dravyaguna has become more important because of global acceptance of the Ayurvedic system of medicine. Ayurveda has its own concept as far as drug formulation is concerned. Ayurveda has documented Dravya, Guna, Rasa, Virya, Vipaka, Prabhava and Karma for all medicinal agents and these represent the pharmacological aspects of drug usage in Ayurveda.

In Ayurveda, drugs have been classified in a number of ways but the classification based on action of the drug is widely accepted. For instance a drug used for alleviating worm infection is known as anthelmintic and in Ayurvedic language, as krimighana. In modern medicine, drugs have been classified according to pharmacological actions. Medicinal plants like Ashwagandha, Brahami, Tulsi, Guggul, Kutki, Kalmegha, Gokshura and Shatavari have been targeted for their application in modern science. Active constituents of the plants have been identified and highly purified extracts are being marketed.

Fig. 2.5 Golden triangle approach.
Studying the Ayurvedic drugs at bimolecular levels may reveal the mechanism of action which has eluded scientists for long time. As far as the disease segment is concerned, hepatology and rheumatology are two areas where Ayurvedic remedies are even prescribed by allopathic physicians. *Silybum marianum* is a well-documented western herbal remedy used for liver diseases. In India, *Picrorhiza kurroa* (kutki), is considered a valued drug for liver diseases. When *P. kurroa* was compared with *S. marianum*, the hepatoprotective effect of *P. kurroa* was found to be similar, or in many cases, superior to the effect of *S. marianum*. However it can be seen that *S. marianum* is more popular than *P. kurroa*. Silymarin the active constituent of *S. marianum* has been isolated and purified and above all pharmacological and pharmacokinetic data is available for the drug.

The reverse approach in pharmacology has been quite successfully applied in the past. The drawback was the long time frame from the observational therapeutics to a new drug. For example, *Rauwolfia serpentina* (sarpagandha) was convincingly demonstrated to be anti-hypertensive by Sen and Bose in 1931. But a drug reserpine, emerged only after 20 yr of work by Vakil, Bein, Muller and Schlitter. This occurred because the path of reverse pharmacology was quite discontinuous.

The paradigm of reverse pharmacology is actually a rediscovery of the path, which founded modern pharmacology. Table 2.2 lists the names of plants, clinical effects, and experimental correlates. The list illustrates how novel clinical bio-dynamic effects can lead to the development of the basic disciplines in pharmacology and biology.

**Table 2.2** Rediscovery of the paradigm of reverse pharmacology (see Fig. 2.6 also).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medicinal Plant</th>
<th>Clinical Effect</th>
<th>Experimental Correlate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Chondrodendron tomentosum</em></td>
<td>Paralysis and death</td>
<td>Neuromuscular block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cinchona officinalis</em></td>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>Antimalarial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Digitalis purpurea</em></td>
<td>Dropsy</td>
<td>Na+K+ ATPase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Papaver somniferum</em></td>
<td>Analgesia</td>
<td>Opioid receptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Physostigma venenosum</em></td>
<td>Ordeal poison</td>
<td>Anticholinesterase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salix alba</em></td>
<td>Fever and pain</td>
<td>Prostaglandins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strychnos nux-vomica</em></td>
<td>Stimulant and convulsant</td>
<td>Glycinergic receptors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There has been a renaissance in Ayurvedic research that western and Indian pharma companies have just started to notice. Reverse pharmacology was only sporadically applied to new drug development. It is the need of the hour to document unknown, unintended and desirable novel prophylactic and therapeutic effects in observational therapeutics. Several new classes of drugs have accidentally emerged by this path (Fig. 2.7).
Fig. 2.7 Scheme for drug discovery from plants used in Ayurveda.

References and further reading


Chapter 3

Ethnopharmacology

3.1 Introduction

With the isolation of quinine from Cinchona in 1820, an ancient herbal cure was transformed into a chemical drug. This was the inspiration for a new scientific discipline—ethnopharmacology—as Western scientists began to reinvent traditional herbal cures by extracting their active principles to make new and profitable drugs.

According to preliminary definition, ethnopharmacology may be defined as a multidisciplinary study of biologically active agents used in traditional medicine.

Or

Ethnopharmacology is the scientific study correlating ethnic groups, their health, and how it relates to their physical habits and methodology in creating and using medicines.

Traditional medicine is a term applied to pre-scientific medical systems that possess bodies of medical knowledge, including pharmacopoeia, that are passed through generations from healer to healer.

Differentiation between ethno pharmacology and pharmacognosy

According to Wardwell, ethno pharmacology and pharmacognosy overlap considerably, but can be differentiated by several distinct features as explained below:

(1) Pharmacognosy considers a broad range of natural products used as therapeutic agents, for medical purposes (such as cotton), as pharmaceutical aids, biologics, and as poisons; ethnopharmacology is restricted to natural products used in a traditional context.
(2) Pharmacognosy is concerned with the history, economics, and commercial processing of natural substances that affect human health; ethnopharmacology seeks to provide a comprehensive view of the human use of crudely processed drugs that includes ethnographic information.

(3) Pharmacognosy has tended to move toward specialized fields such as biosynthesis and fermentation microbiology; ethnopharmacology aims to support interdisciplinary collaboration.

3.2 Ethnopharmacology and Traditional Medicine

Numerous drugs have entered the international pharmacopoeia via the study of ethnopharmacology and traditional medicine. For traditional medicines, newer guidelines of standardization, manufacture and quality control and scientifically rigorous research on the scientific basis for traditional treatments will be required. Traditional medical traditions can offer a more holistic approach to drug design and myriad possible targets for scientific analysis.

Powerful new technologies such as automated separation techniques, high-throughput screening and combinatorial chemistry are revolutionizing drug discovery. Traditional knowledge can serve as a powerful search engine, which will greatly facilitate and rediscover intentional, focused and safe natural product drug discovery. By looking at the historical trends in drug and medical developments, it is possible to understand how current drug development will benefit from this partnership.

Ayurvedic and traditional Chinese systems are great living traditions. These traditions have relatively organized databases, and more exhaustive descriptions of botanical material that are available and can be tested using modern scientific methods. Both systems of medicine thus have an important role in bioprospecting of new medicines. Good botanical practices which can improve the quality control procedures of monitoring impurities, heavy metals and other toxins in the raw material can make ethnopharmacology research more meaningful.

Drug discovery in the current scenario has become unproductive to the point where the economic future of the industry is questionable. The research and development thrust in the pharmaceutical sector needs to focus on development of new drugs, innovative processes for known drugs and development of plant-based drugs through investigation of leads from the traditional systems of medicine. Traditional medicine can provide novel inputs into the drug development process. However, bioprospecting—the search for economically valuable natural resources—by pharmaceutical
companies, or on their behalf, has not been conspicuously successful in recent years.

3.3 Role for Physicians in Ethnopharmacology and Drug Discovery

Ethnopharmacology investigations classically involved traditional healers, botanists, anthropologists, chemists and pharmacologists. The role of some groups of researchers but not of physicians has been highlighted and well defined in ethnomedical investigations. Historical data has shown that the discovery of several important modern drugs of herbal origin owe to the medical knowledge and clinical expertise of physicians. Current trends indicate a negligible role of physicians in ethnomedical studies.

The rising cost of modern drug development is attributed to the lack of using a classical ethnopharmacological approach. Physicians can play multiple roles in the ethnopharmacological studies to facilitate drug discovery as well as to rescue the authentic traditional knowledge of use of medicinal plants. These include:

1. Ethnopharmacological field work which involves: interviewing healers; interpreting traditional terminologies into their modern counterparts; examining patients who are consuming herbal remedies; and identifying the disease for which an herbal remedy is used.
2. Interpretation of signs and symptoms mentioned in ancient texts and suggesting the proper use of old traditional remedies in the light of modern medicine.
3. Clinical studies on herbs and their interaction with modern medicines.
4. Advising pharmacologists to carry out laboratory studies on herbs that have been observed during field studies.
5. Work in collaboration with local healers to strengthen the traditional system of medicine in a community.

A physician’s involvement in ethnopharmacological studies will lead to more reliable information on traditional use of medicinal plants both from field and ancient texts, more focused and cheaper natural product based drug discovery, and will bridge the gap between traditional and modern medicine.

3.4 Ethnopharmacology and Cultural Relativism

It is commonly accepted that people differ culturally. In the Giger and Davidhizar Transcultural Assessment Model, cultural differences are
evident in communication, spatial relationships and needs, social organizations, time orientation, the ability or desire to control the environment, and biological variations. While many individuals appreciate that there are differences between cultures, what is less well recognized is that people also vary according to biological variations depending on their racial and ethnic group. In the last 15 years, information about biological variations has rapidly expanded and that knowledge is essential in order to understand and provide care to individuals from another culture or another racial and ethnic group.

Attention to biological variations related to race and ethnicity, the last component of the Giger and Davidhizar Transcultural Nursing Assessment Model, is a critical phenomenon that needs to be assessed in order to develop and implement a culturally sensitive plan of care in an effort to understand ethnopharmacology.

The Giger and Davidhizar Transcultural Assessment Model was developed in 1988 in response to the need for nursing students in an undergraduate program to assess and provide care for culturally diverse patients. The model included six cultural phenomena: communication, time, space, social organization, environmental control, and biological variations. These provide a framework for patient assessment and from which culturally sensitive care can be designed.

3.5 Ethnobotany/Ethnopharmacology and Mass Bioprospecting

Ethnobotany/ethnopharmacology has contributed to the discovery of many important plant-derived drugs. Field explorations, to seek and document indigenous and traditional medical knowledge (IMK/TMK), and/or the biodiversity, with which the IMK/TMK is attached, and its conversion into a commercialized product is known as bioprospecting or biodiversity prospecting. When performed in a large-scale operation, the effort is referred to as mass bioprospecting.

Experiences from the mass bioprospecting efforts undertaken by the United States National Cancer Institute, the National Cooperative Drug Discovery Groups (NCDDG) and the International Cooperative Biodiversity Groups (ICBG) programs demonstrate that mass bioprospecting is a complex process, involving expertise from diverse areas of human endeavors, but central to it is the Memorandum of Agreement (MOA) that recognizes issues on genetic access, prior informed consent, intellectual property and the sharing of benefits that may arise as a result of the effort. Future mass bioprospecting endeavors must take heed of the lessons learned from past and present experiences in the planning for a successful mass bioprospecting venture.
Traditional medicines play an important role in the provision of health care in many developing countries. Their use is also significant in developed countries, increasing their commercial value. Several ‘high-profile’ cases of patenting of traditional medicines, without consent from or compensation to their holders, have further focused attention on their importance. Traditional medicine usually involves biological resources and the knowledge of local and indigenous peoples and/or healers regarding their medicinal use; thus, it is interlinked with biodiversity conservation and indigenous peoples’ rights over their knowledge and resources.

At this multi-faceted interface, complex ethical questions arise. The key issues involve dilemmas and challenges in utilizing and protecting traditional medicines. Are there ways to modify and devise new forms of intellectual property ownership that may better suit the needs of those who seek to protect traditional medicine? There also is the question whether such protection, which may restrict access, is the preferred option. While intellectual property protection for traditional medicines has multiple and diverse objectives, the priorities are often not clear and the strategies which could be deployed may interfere with each other, as well as with the prioritization of objectives. This is further aggravated by differences in stakeholders’ concepts on ownership of knowledge and by uncertain or paradoxical effects of some potentially useful strategies. Thus, policymakers should address the multiple, multi-layered issues and questions, and try to develop a range of solutions in order to address and balance the various objectives and interests.

When new plant-derived therapeutics based on indigenous knowledge are being explored, it is important that the pharmaceutical companies return benefits to the native populations and the local governments from which the research material was obtained. When a potentially marketable plant product is being developed, it is essential that equitable agreements have already been established between the pharmaceutical companies and the people and/or countries from which this indigenous knowledge was acquired.

Equally important is the commitment to provide immediate reciprocity that will enhance the welfare, the biocultural diversity and the well-being of the forest peoples. These measures should commence when a research project begins and continue during its duration. The development of these measures must be based upon the expressed needs of the indigenous communities. There is a relationship between the stability of the rain forest biocultural diversity, the creation and development of agro-forest resources and long-term benefits to the forest people.
3.6 Ethnopharmacology: Novel Applications Vaccines

The combined use of vaccines and immunostimulants is emerging as one of the innovative approaches in adjuvant development. The role of herbal drugs as immunomodulator agents are well-documented and their importance in bioprospecting is obvious. Recently researchers have suggested using ethno pharmacology in contrast to the random screening approach since it is more cost and time effective.

Antiviral

Herbal medicinal products have been used as a source of putative candidate drugs in many diseases. However, in case of viral diseases, the development of antivirals from natural sources is less explored, probably because within the virus there are few specific targets where the small molecules can interact to inhibit or kill the virus. The currently available antiherpes drugs are nucleoside analogs that did not cure the lifelong or recurrent infections and the use of these drugs often leads to the development of viral resistance coupled with the problem of side effects, recurrence and viral latency. However a wide array of herbal products, used by diverse medicinal systems throughout the world, showed a high level of antiherpes virus activities and many of them have complementary and overlapping mechanisms of action, either by inhibiting viral replication, or by viral genome synthesis.

Further reading


Chapter 4

Medicinal Phytochemistry

4.1 Introduction

Phytochemistry is defined as the study of chemical composition of medicinal plants or phyto-drugs. Phytochemistry is a significant subject of the pharmacognosy curriculum. Today, one is witnessing an explosive growth of the herbal drug industry. Standardized herbal extracts and phytochemicals are in high demand for applied research as well as commercial use. The phytochemistry course taught in pharmacy schools deals with the process of isolation, purification and pre-clinical studies of herbal extracts and phytochemicals.

Before the availability of synthetic drugs, phytodrugs or herbal drugs were the mainstay of treatment. Several factors including the lack of emergency medicines, surgery, research and standardization, led to the decline of phytomedicine. With the discovery of opium alkaloid, morphine, chemists started targeting herbal drugs for bioactive compounds (referred to as phytochemicals). Phytochemicals may affect health, but are not essential nutrients. Most of the phytochemicals used in the modern pharmaceutical industry are secondary metabolites. Emerging factors like drug-resistance, cost-effectiveness and side-effects of synthetic drugs have led to the resurgence of phytomedicine.

World Health Organization (WHO) has identified the growing popularity of phytomedicine. Several articles and documents have been published highlighting the future of phytomedicine. Preclinical or non-pharmacological studies published in index journals have demonstrated the utility of standardized herbal extracts and phytochemicals. Clinical-studies done on phytodrugs like garlic, St. John’s wort, purple cone-flower, ginseng, black-cohosh and Ginkgo have proved ancient theories to be accurate. More so, these phytodrugs have been documented in reputed medical text-books.
The herbal drug industry is in the transition stage. The time is ripe for initiating more research activities in this unexplored field. Non-standardized herbal preparations like infusions, decoctions, tinctures and powders have been largely replaced by standardized herbal preparations like extracts. Extracts are standardized to marker-compounds or active-constituents. Marker-compounds are used in identification of plant material. It is of more industrial importance. Active-constituents are responsible for pharmacological or medicinal activity of the extract.

4.2 Classification of phytochemistry

In our view, phytochemistry can be divided into two classes:

1. Conventional or traditional phytochemistry.
2. Medicinal or applied phytochemistry.

Conventional phytochemistry, adopts procedures for isolation and purification of active constituents of medicinal plants. The study of this discipline is of more relevance to the pharmaceutical industry. A detailed discussion of conventional phytochemical techniques is beyond the scope of this book. Medicinal phytochemistry is emerging as a new subject keeping in mind recent trends in phytotherapy. This subject is of interest to medical and herbal professionals. Recently, some institutes have introduced courses or modules on herbal medicine or phytotherapy in the regular medical syllabus.

4.3 Scope of medicinal phytochemistry

Medicinal phytochemistry seems to be an interdisciplinary subject. For a well-trained medicinal phytochemist, knowledge of subjects like medicinal or pharmaceutical botany, anatomy, physiology, pathology, pharmacognosy, ethnopharmacology, chemical ecology, conventional phytochemistry, toxicology, traditional systems of medicine (Ayurveda, Siddha, Homeopathy, Traditional Chinese Medicine, and Unani), clinical research and biostatistics are prerequisites. While several complementary and alternative systems of medicine are in practice, the Traditional Chinese System (TCM) has made tremendous progress regarding the application of phytochemistry in medicine.

A typical medicinal phytochemistry course can be postgraduate and of a 2-yr duration. In case of the Ayurvedic curriculum, medicinal phytochemistry can combine well with Dravyaguna. Dravyaguna is defined as a study of Ayurvedic perspective of medicinal plants. A comparative curriculum blending ancient and modern concepts of ancient therapy will be helpful for students of Ayurveda. A curriculum of herbal
medicine taught in Australia, Europe and the United States have some courses of medicinal phytochemistry but it needs significant expansion.

### 4.4 Career prospects

A well-trained medicinal phytochemist can join academic institutes conducting research on natural medicinal products or as an expert in the herbal drug industry. There is a cut-throat competition in the herbal drug industry and well-trained medicinal phytochemists are highly sort after.

### 4.5 Challenges in the future

Herbal medicine is expanding rapidly. There is a need to create specialty subjects in the existing curriculum of herbal medicine. Many allopathic practitioners are interested in understanding the mechanism of actions of phyto-drugs. Most of the CAM practitioners have little interest towards integrating the modern and traditional systems of medicine. However, some CAM practitioners have begun to understand the importance of the integrative approach. In order to sustain medicinal phytochemistry as a subject in the near future, more funds for research and development are needed. The course is essential for creating super-specialty subjects like phytopharmacology and phytopharmacotherapy.

### Further reading


Chapter 5

Phytochemicals

5.1 Introduction

‘Psyto’ is the Greek word for plants. Phytochemicals literally means chemicals produced by plants. The term is reserved for those plant chemicals that have a beneficial effect on human health but are not essential from the point of view nutrition (see phytonutrients). If the term is analyzed minutely, phytochemical means ‘fight-o-chemicals’. Twenty-five thousand phytochemicals are known to exist in the plant flora. It is estimated that approximately 10,000 alkaloids and 4,000 flavonoids are distributed in the plant kingdom.

Medicinal plants rich in phytochemicals have been used for centuries in the treatment and prevention of diseases. Some phytochemicals can be dangerous and some have no effect on human health. Sometimes some of the compounds in plants with potent medicinal properties may not necessarily be chemicals, but may be elements like selenium or chromium.

Thousands of phytochemicals have been isolated and characterized from plants, including fruits and vegetables. The isolated phytochemicals are grouped into distinctive classes by the number and kind of constitutive atoms and the structure of the basic skeleton. Phytochemicals derived from the plants remain the basis for a large proportion of the commercial medications used today for the treatment of a wide range of diseases.

5.2 Definition of phytochemical

Definition 1

A phytochemical is a natural bioactive compound found in plant foods that works with nutrients and dietary fiber to protect against diseases.

Definition 2

Phytochemicals are chemicals produced by plants. They may affect health, but are not-essential nutrients as our diet does not require them to sustain life in the same way as vitamins and minerals.
Phytochemicals are non-nutritive plant chemicals that contain protective, disease-preventing compounds.

Or

Phytochemicals are defined as non-nutritive biologically active compounds.

5.3 Evolution process of phytochemicals

Gottlieb (1993) proposed the redox theory for evolution of phytochemicals. According to this theory, when the evolution of plants took place, a negligible amount of oxygen was present in the atmosphere. With an increase in atmospheric oxygen, the environment was polluted as a direct result of plant metabolism. With the passage of time, plants kept on acquiring antioxidants, which neutralized the ill-effects of free-radicals. Small plants like algae, fungi, liverworts and mosses survived the increase in atmospheric oxygen. Over a period of time, higher plants which were oxygen resistant, like ferns, gymnosperms and angiosperms evolved.

The plants then evolved phytochemicals possessing a fighting capacity (fight-o-chemicals) against microorganisms and offering a protective effect to the genetic material. Phytochemicals also exert protective effects against solar-radiation and insect invasion. When the evolution of animal species took place, it made dependent on the plants for food and shelter. The plants consumed by animals, including human-beings, provided them with their own chemical defense mechanisms. Consumption of phytochemicals by humans has shown to keep cells in the body healthy and stable in many ways.

Phytochemicals accumulated by plants play a significant role in interaction with the surroundings. Recently, it has been postulated that the underlying mechanism in the evolution of phytochemicals by plants includes biosynthetic enzymes. However the role of transcription factors in coordinating expression of all the genes in the evolution pathways is poorly understood. According to Grotewold (2005), duplication of regulatory genes results in control of new pathways. New pathways are evolved as a result of mutation, which impairs the routine function, resulting in inactivating one or more steps in a metabolic pathway. As a result of which, intermediates start accumulating and are converted into new compounds by specific enzymes.

5.4 Classification of phytochemicals

A brief account of the type of phytochemicals distributed in the plant flora is given below.
5.4.1 Alkaloids

Alkaloids are basically nitrogen bases. The amino acids act as building blocks for the biosynthesis of alkaloids. Alkaloids are responsible for physiological effects in man or in animal. Alkaloids have basic properties and are alkaline in reaction, turning red litmus paper blue.

Alkaloids are basically compound ammonias, where various radicals replace one or more atoms of hydrogen. Alkaloids combine with acids to form crystalline salts without the production of water. The majority of alkaloids exist in solid form like atropine and contain oxygen. Some alkaloids like lobeline or nicotine occur in a liquid form and contain carbon, hydrogen, and nitrogen.

Alkaloids have one peculiarity regarding solubility in organic solvents. They are readily soluble in alcohol and sparingly soluble in water. The salts of alkaloids are usually soluble in water. In nature, the alkaloids exist in many plants: in larger proportion in the seeds and roots often in combination with vegetable acids. The solutions of alkaloids are intensely bitter.

The name of alkaloids, end in -ine suffix. The salts of alkaloids are official in various pharmacopoeia. Codeine, atropine, morphine, ergotamine and ephedrine are common examples. As discussed earlier alkaloids are responsible for physiological effects in man or animals. The physiological effects are due to secondary metabolites arising from biochemical pathways operating in the plant cell. Alkaloids constitute the largest group of secondary chemical constituents. Alkaloids are classified as shown in Fig. 5.1.

- Pyridine
- Piperidine
- Pyrrolidine
- Pyrrolizidine
- Indole
- Purine
- Imidazole
Amino acids act as a precursor for biosynthesis of alkaloids. Ornithine and lysine are common amino acids used as starting material for alkaloid biosynthesis. Cocaine and nicotine are classical examples from this series (Fig. 5.2).

**Fig. 5.1** Classification of alkaloids.

**Fig. 5.2** Diagrammatic representation of alkaloid biosynthesis.
Phenylalanine and tyrosine act as precursors for opium alkaloid biosynthesis. Tryptophan is a significant source of Vinca alkaloids. Alkaloids are derived from anthranilic acid (Fig. 5.3), which is an intermediate in biosynthesis of tryptophan. Some alkaloids are derived from acetate, terpene or shikimic acid. Shikimic acid is a significant metabolite as most of the aromatic constituents are derived from shikimic acid pathway (Fig. 5.3).

\[ \text{Fig. 5.3 Structure of anthranilic acid and shikimic acid.} \]

**Steroidal alkaloids**

They are also known as azosteroids. Depending upon the parent carbon skeleton, they are classified in four types (Fig. 5.4). They are found in Apocynaceae, Buxaceae, Solanaceae, and Liliaceae.

Alkaloids are significant sources of pharmaceutical drugs. More than 12,000-alkaloids are known to exist in green flora and only few have been exploited for medicinal purposes. Structures of important alkaloids are presented in Figs. 5.5 and 5.6.

**5.4.2 More about alkaloids**

*Cystisus scoaprius* is known to contain a volatile alkaloid, *sparteine* and a non-volatile alkaloid, *sarthannine*. *Abies webbiana* contains a crystalline alkaloid, *taxine* (Fig. 5.7).

*Asimina triloba* contains benzyl isoquinoline alkaloid *anolobine*. *Galipea officinalis* is reported to contain quinoline alkaloids including (cuspareine, galipine, galipoline, quinaldine, cuspareine, galipoidine, and l-methyl-2-quinolone). *Vaccinium myrtillus* contains quinolizidine alkaloids: *myrtine* and *epimyrtine*.

Alkaloids (*atidine, atisine, hetidine, hetsine, heteratisine, heterophylline, heterophyllisine, heterophyllidine, isoatisine*), are present in *Aconitum heterophyllum* (Fig. 5.8).
Phytochemicals

Steroidal alkaloids
(Azosteroids)

- Nitrogen is in steroid nuclear skeleton
  - Pregnane alkaloids
  - Funtumine
  - Cyclobuxine D
  - Polchystermine A

- Nitrogen is in no or more side chain
  - Solanum alkaloids
  - Veratrum alkaloids

- Solanine

Jerveratum
Cerveratum

Fig. 5.4 Classification of steroidal alkaloids.

Aconitine

Atropine

Berberine
Pelosine or cissampelina is an amorphous alkaloid present in Cissampelos pareira. It is related to berberine. Protoberberine alkaloids, bebeberine, d-isochondrodensrine, menismine, hayatine (dl-bebeberine), hayatidine and cissamine or cyclanoline (Fig. 5.9), pareirine, are reported from the roots of Cissampelos pareira. Cissampareine has an inhibitory action against human carcinoma cells of the nasopharynx in cell culture. \textit{dl-curine} is used as a muscle relaxant.

\textit{Cyclea peltata} contains alkaloids including \textit{d-tetrandrine}, \textit{dl-tetrandrine}, \textit{isotetrandrine}, \textit{limacine}, berbamine, bomoarmoline, cycleapeltine, cyleadrine, cycleacurine, cycleanorine and cycleahomine. Tetrandrine is an irritant to mucosa, produces hypoglycemia in rats and emesis in pigeons. It is also a cardiac depressant. \textit{Coscinium fenestra}m contains alkaloids including berberine, jatorrhizine, berbaruine, \textit{N,N-di-Me-lindacarpine}, thalifendine and palmitine.
Fig. 5.6 Structure of important alkaloids continued.
Fig. 5.7 Structure of Taxine.

Fig. 5.8 Structure of major alkaloids of *Aconitum heterophyllum*.
Ervatamia heyneana contains alkaloids including, coronaridine, heyneanine, voacangine, \( \psi \)-indoxy voacangine, and ibogamine. Isovoacrisitine is anticholinergic and antihistaminic. Coronaridine, on oral administration, prevents pregnancy in rats. It is cytotoxic against P 388 lymphocytic leukemia. It also contains camptothecine. Rutaecarpine and dehydroevodiamine from Euodia rutaecarpa show, in vitro, uterotonic effect on the rat uterus. It also contains a sympathomimetic alkaloid, synephrine. Alkaloidal fraction of Fritillaria imperialis containing imperialine which reduces blood pressure and shows relaxant and antispasmodic activity. Bulb of Fritillaria royeli contains alkaloid, kashmirine.

Celatrus paniculatus, popularly known as Jyotishmati in Ayurveda, is reported to contain two alkaloids, ceastrine (Fig. 5.9) and paniculatine. The former is recorded to be powerful stimulant and pyrogenic. Some authors report the presence of celopagine, celophanigine, and cepapanine. Eclipta alba is reported to contain ecliptine and nicotine (0.078%).

Loturine (Fig. 5.11), loturidine and colloturine, present in Symplocos racemosa, are chemically related to harmine found in Peganum harmala. Gentianaine present in medicinal plants of Gentianaceae has been reported to have antipsychotic, antimalarial and antiamebic activities (Fig. 5.11). Other alkaloids distributed in medicinal plants of gentianaceae are gentianaine, gentianadine, gentialutine, gentiocrucine and gentianamine (Fig. 5.10). Erthyrocentaurine is a monoterpene alkaloid reported from Swertia laurii and Enicostemma hyssopifolium.

Phyllantidine and phyllantine (Fig. 5.11) are reported from leaves, fruits, and in vitro tissue cultures of Emblica officinalis.
Ryania speciosa, indigenous to South America, contains an insecticidal alkaloid, ryanodine. Alstonia scholaris is known to contain antimalarial alkaloids including alsotinine, ditamine, echitamine and echitanine (Fig. 5.11). Ditamine possesses anti-periodic properties equal to the best quinine sulfate. A. scholaris also contains an alkaloid called scholaricine (Fig. 5.11). Alstonia constricta contains indole alkaloids including reserpine, deserpidine, alstonine, tetrahydroalstonine, alstonidine, and yohimbine. N-isobutyl 2, 4 decadieamide, a waxy alkaloid from Piper longum has antitubercular activity (Fig. 5.12).
Actinidine is present in *Nardostachys jatamansi*. Coptine, copsine, coptisine and palmatine are reported from *Coptis teeta*. Mimosine is present in *Mimosa pudica* and is a protoplasmic poison. Moringine reported from *Moringa olfera* acts as a cardiac stimulant, bronchodilator, and has a depressant action on smooth muscle fibers and an inhibitory effect on the tone and movements of the intestine in rabbits and guinea pigs (Fig. 5.13).

![Fig. 5.12 Structure of N-isobutyl 2, 4 decadieamide.](image1)

![Fig. 5.13 Structure of alkaloids reported from medicinal plants.](image2)

Strycchnine, Brucine, icajine and vomicine (*Strychnos nux vomica*), carpaine (*Carica papaya*), colchicine (*Colchium luteum*), diaboline and novacine (*Strychnos potatorum*), lycoreine (*Crinum latifolium*), noroxyhydrastinine (*Coscinium fenestratum*), piperlongumine, piperlonguminine and piperlatine (*Piper longum*), precatorine (*Abrus precatorius*) and asparagamine (a polycyclic alkaloid from *Asparagus racemosus*) are other examples of alkaloids isolated from medicinal plants (Fig. 5.14).

Experiments conducted with *tylophorine*, a phenanthroindalizidine alkaloid, present in *Tylophora asthmatica* in various animal models, has shown significant anti-inflammatory, anti-anaphylactic and anti-spasmodic activities (Fig. 5.15).
Imidazole alkaloid, *chaksine* isolated from *Cassia absus* has antibacterial activity. In a test for antifungal activity, chaksine iodide at 0.5% inhibited all fungi tested (Fig. 5.16). *Isochaksine* has similar activities to chaksine, but usually at higher doses.

A new carbazole alkaloid, *clausenol*, isolated from an alcoholic extract of the stem bark, of *Clausena anisata* was found to be active against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria and fungi (Fig. 5.17). Alkaloids; 3-formylcarbazole, *mukonal* (Fig. 5.18), 3-methoxycarbonylcarbazole,
2-hydroxy-3-formyl-7-methoxycarbazole, and clauszoline from *Clausena excavata* eliminates *Mycobacteria* with MIC values ranging from 50–200µg/mL. 3-Formylcarbazole, mukonal, 3-methoxycarbonylcarbazole, and 2-hydroxy-3-formyl-7-methoxycarbazole show antifungal activity with IC50 values of 13.6, 29.3, 9.5, and 2.8µg/mL, respectively. Carbazole alkaloids of the *Clausena* species and Rutaceae in general are related in structure to the antitumor alkaloid ellipticine and hold some potential as cytotoxic and antiviral agents.
Mahanine (Fig. 5.19), a carbazole alkaloid, isolated from *Micromelum minutum*, induces apoptosis in the human myeloid cancer cell HL-60 at 10µM via activation of caspase-3 through a mitochondrial dependent pathway.

![Fig. 5.19 Structure of Mahanine.](image)

**Bicuculline** acts as an antagonist at GABA receptor. It has been shown to compete with GABA for specific sites on synaptosomes (Fig. 5.20). The alkaloid is reported from *Corydalis govniana*. The trans-conformation of GABA fits the structure of (+)–bicuculline.

![Fig. 5.20 Structure of (+)–Bicuculline.](image)

**Hydrastine** from *Hydrastis canadensis* is a potent GABA$_A$ competitive antagonist, twice as potent as bicuculline (Fig. 5.21).

![Fig. 5.21 Structure of Hydrastine.](image)
Isoquinoline alkaloid, *liriodenine*, isolated from *Fissistigma glaucescens* is known to block the muscarinic receptors and therefore impede the secretion of gastric juices and the contraction of gastric smooth muscles. Isoquinoline alkaloid, *cryptofolione* (Fig. 5.22), isolated from *Cryptocarya tomentosa* seems to have anxiolytic potential as it resembles Kawai, the active principle of *Piper methysticum*.

![Fig. 5.22 Structure of Cryptofolione.](image)

*Chelerythrine* from *Sanguinaria canadensis* is a narcotic (Fig. 5.23). *Corycavine* isolated from *Corydalis tuberosa* is antihelmintic (Fig. 5.24). *Corydaline* isolated from *Corydalis govaniana* is antiperiodic (Fig. 5.25).

![Fig. 5.23 Structure of Chelerythrine.](image)

![Fig. 5.24 Structure of Corycavine.](image)
Berberine (Fig. 5.26) is the chief alkaloid from roots and stem-bark of *Berberis aristata*, *B. asiatica*, *B. lycium*, *B. vulgaris* and *B. umbellata*. Berberine has diverse pharmacological activities including antibacterial, antihypertensive, and cholagouge.

Berberine sulfate has been shown to inhibit the growth of *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Giardia lamblia* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*, *in vitro*. The parasites all exhibited morphological changes after exposure to berberine sulfate. In one experiment, berberine hydrochloride reduced the cholera toxin-induced secretion of water, sodium and chloride in perfused rat ileum. Berberine was also found to inhibit the intestinal secretory response of *Vibrio cholerae* and *Escherichia coli* enterotoxins without causing histological damage to the intestinal mucosa.
Berberine is also active against other intestinal infections that cause acute diarrhea such as *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Salmonella paratyphi* and various *Klebsiella* species. Berberine sulfate has been shown to block the adherence of *Streptococcus pyogenes* and *E. coli* to host cells, possibly explaining its mechanism of action against numerous pathogens.

Berberine was found to be the active constituent in an extract of *Hydrastis canadensis* root that demonstrated activity against a multiple drug-resistant strain of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. Berberine also inhibits *Helicobacter pylori*. Berberine has a long history of use for eye infections. In one study that looked at the effectiveness in treating trachoma, berberine was better than sulfacetamide in eradicating *Chlamydia trachomatis* from the eye and preventing a relapse of symptoms.

Berberine has a choleretic (bile-stimulating) effect and has been shown to lower bilirubin levels. Berberine inhibited the effects of tumor promoters on the skin using a mouse model. There is evidence that berberine also has a direct tumor killing effect and has the ability to stimulate production of white blood cells.

Berberine has hypotensive, antisecretory and sedative effects. The mechanism for these effects may be explained by the fact that berberine has platelet α2 adrenoceptor agonist activity that is similar to that of clonidine.

Berberine inhibits the growth of HepG2 cells by direct interaction with DNA in which it intercalates. Berberine, extracted from *Arcangelisia flava*, inhibits the enzymatic activity of *Plasmodium falciparum* telomerase dose-dependently at doses ranging from 30–300mM. *Palmatine* (Fig. 5.87), *berberine*, *jatrorrhizine* (Fig. 5.87), and dihydroberberine (Fig. 5.27) inhibit the growth of *Babesia gibsoni* cultured in vitro at very small doses.

![Structure of Dihydroberberine](image)

*Fig. 5.27 Structure of Dihydroberberine.*

*Berbamine* (Fig. 5.28) obtained from the root of *B. poiretii* increases leucocytosis. *Oxycanthine* (Fig. 5.29) is considered to be less potent as compared to berberine. Other alkaloids distributed among Berberis species include *oxyberberine*, *berbinine*, *berbericine* and *berbericinine*. Berbericine is identical with berberine-acetone complex.
Alkaloids of *Uncaria tomentosa* include rhynchophylline (antihypertensive), hirsutine (local anesthetic) and mitraphylline (diuretic) (Fig. 5.30). The plant also contains 5-α-carboxystrictosidine, isopteropodine, isomitraphyllin and isorynchophylline.
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

Fig. 5.30 Structure of alkaloids of Uncaria tomentosa.

*Pausinystalia yohimbe* contains stimulant alkaloid, **yohimbine or quebrachine** (Fig. 5.31). Yohimbine causes an increase in epinephrine release from the adrenal gland and results in a dose-dependent increase in plasma epinephrine. Yohimbine, given in moderate doses; increases systolic blood pressure in patients with orthostatic hypotension due to primary autonomic failure.

Yohimbine significantly enhanced the overall analgesic effect of morphine with post operative dental pain. One study demonstrated yohimbine reversed sedation and shortened the duration of analgesia associated with clonidine administered post operatively. The alkaloid has been investigated clinically in erectile dysfunction, post traumatic stress disorder and Parkinson’s disease.

Fig. 5.31 Structure of Yohimbine.

*Sanguinaria canadensis* contain isoquinoline alkaloids, **sanguinarine, chelerythrine and oxysanguinarine**: protoberberine-type: **berberine, coptisine**: protopine-type: **protopine, α- and β-allocryptopine**. Sanguinarine is antimicrobial and anti-inflammatory. Its use as an antiplaque agent and for gingivitis is plausible and has been documented in diverse studies.
The alkaloids initially act as a narcotic, causing severe cramps followed by local paralysis of sensitive nerve endings. Caulophyllum thalictroides contain isoquinoline alkaloid, magnoflorine.

**Brahmine** (0.01%) is a highly toxic alkaloid obtained from Hydrocotyle asiatica. In therapeutic dosage, it resembles strychnine. It does not produce reflex irritation. **Herpestine** is another alkaloid from same plant. **Adifoline**, alkaloid obtained from acetone fraction of wood of Adina cordifolia is a central nervous system depressant and hypotensive in experimental animals.

**Punarnavine**, an alkaloid present in Boerrhavia diffusa (punarnava) is bitter in taste. Punarnavine hydrochloride is the salt in crystalline form. Punarnavine sulfate is a needle shaped crystalline form brownish-white in color. Yield of punarnavine sulfate from the plant is 0.053%. Punarnavine is a diuretic and its acts chiefly on renal epithelium. It is non-toxic, however the nature of the alkaloid is not known.

**Himbacine**, obtained from Gabulimina baccata is a muscarinic antagonist (Fig. 5.32). **Aegeline** from Aegle marlemlus is reported to be a cardiac tonic and useful in asthma (Fig. 5.33). **Aegelenine** is identical with fagarine isolated from Zanthoxylum aethanopodium. The plant, in addition, contains alkaloids including; **skimmianine** (Fig. 5.34), **shahidine**, O-methylhalfordinol and isopentylhalfordinol. α-pederine and β-pederine are obtained from Paederia foetida.

![Fig. 5.32 Structure of Himbacine.](image-url)
Christembine is obtained from Embelia ribes. Hymenodictyoline is one of the few alkaloids which do not contain oxygen and is obtained from Hymenodictyon excelsum. Fagamide, an alkaloid present in Zanthoxylum acaanthopodium is the possible irritating principle. Nishindine is extracted from Vitex negundo. Viola odorata yields violine, which is emetic. Anistrocladinine isolated from Ancistrocladus heyneanus has antispasmodic acitivity on isolated guinea pig ileum comparable with papaverine.

Achilleine, an alkaloid of Achillea millefolium is considered to be an active haemostatic. It reduces blood-clot in rabbits. The total alkaloidal content (mucuadine, mucuadinine, mucucuadinine, pruriendine, mucunine, mucunadine and nicotine) of Mucuna prurita demonstrated increased spermatogenesis in albino rats. O-methylsolanocapsine isolated from Solanum pseudocapsicum leaves possess strong cytotoxic properties (Fig. 5.35).

Saussurine, an alkaloid isolated from Saussurea lappa is a potent bronchodilator. It has depressant action on the involuntary muscle fibers of the bronchioles and gastrointestinal tract. Saussurine tartrate has been shown to produce a definite relaxation of the bronchioles in the same way as adrenaline does. Saussurine has a positive inotropic action on the heart muscle.
The hydrochloride of alkaloid, *evolvine* present in *Evolvulus alsinoides* is reported to exhibit lobeline-like action on the cardiovascular system. In cats, the drug has significant sympathomimetic activity. The blood pressure remains elevated for a longer duration as compared to adrenaline. Increase in peripheral pressure is observed on local injection of the drug. *Phaeanthus ebracteolatus* contains bis-benzylisoquinoline known as *phaeantharine* which has exhibited some levels of antibacterial activity.

*Lycoiside*, at lower concentrations (1–20 µg/ml), *in vitro*, produces statistically significant protection against Tween 80-induced degranulation, as also to sensitized mast cells challenged with an antigen (horse serum). It also provided protection against compound 48/80-induced degranulation of mast cells when administered *in vivo* in a dose of 1–5 mg/kg, po.

*Cerpegin*, a novel furopyridine alkaloid isolated from *Cerpegia juncea* demonstrates dose-related analgesic effect in mice. Cerpegin do not produce any autonomic or behavioral changes up to a dose of 200 mg/kg but doses of more than 400 mg/kg produced excitation and later convulsions in mice (Fig. 5.36).

![Fig. 5.36 Structure of Cerpegin.](image)

*Premnazole*, an isoxazole alkaloid isolated from *Premna integrifolia α. and Gmelina arborea* has significant anti-inflammatory activity in reducing cotton pellet-induced granuloma formation in rats (Fig. 5.37). The anti-inflammatory activity is comparable to that of phenylbutazone.

![Fig. 5.37 Structure of Premnazole.](image)

The water-soluble alkaloid, *achyranthine*, isolated from *Achyranthes aspera* has been screened for its anti-inflammatory and antiarthritic activity against carrageenin-induced foot oedema, granuloma pouch, formalin induced arthritis and adjuvant arthritis in rats. It shows significant anti-inflammatory activity in all the four models employed but is less active
than phenylbutazone and betamethasone. Incidence of gastric ulcers is maximum with betamethasone and minimum with achyranthine.

Anti-inflammatory activity of *crotalaburnine* (anacrotine) isolated from *Crotalbria laburnifolia* has been investigated against several models of inflammation (Fig. 5.38). The effect has been compared with the activity of hydrocortisone, phenylbutazone, sodium salicylate and cyproheptadine against different types of inflammation.

![Fig. 5.38 Structure of Crotalaburnine.](image)

In normal rats crotalaburnine (10 mg/kg s.c.), phenylbutazone (100 mg/kg oral) and sodium salicylate (500 mg/kg i.p.) inhibits hyaluronidase-induced oedema. However, in adrenalectomized rats, there is a reduction of the inhibitory effect of sodium salicylate but not of phenylbutazone or crotalaburnine.

*Solkhasianine* is a new glycoalkaloid from *Solanum khasianum*. *Solasodine*, an alkaloid of *Solanum xanthocarpum* demonstrates antifertility activity in males and dogs (Fig. 5.39). The alkaloid on oral administration results in inhibition of spermatogenesis and sperm motility. The mechanism of action of solasodine may be attributed to inhibition of testosterone release. *Yuehchukene*, an alkaloid from *Murraya paniculata* is used to regulate fertility in China.

![Fig. 5.39 Structure of Solasodine.](image)
Pergularinine, tylophorinidine and deoxytubulosine isolated from the Indian medicinal plants *Pergularia pallida* and *Alangium lamarckii* respectively, inhibits (IC50 = 50 microM) the elevated TS activity of leukocytes in cancer patients with clinically diagnosed chronic myelocytic leukemia (n = 10), acute lymphocytic leukemia and metastatic solid tumors (Figs. 5.40 and 5.41).

![Fig. 5.40 Structure of Tylophorinidine.](image)

![Fig. 5.41 Structure of Deoxytubulosine.](image)

Cryptolepine (Fig. 5.42) is an indolisoquinoline antimalarial alkaloid with IC50 value approximately half of chloroquine. It was shown that the alkaloid might interact with DNA, and it appeared that two nitrogen
atoms N and N-CH3 of cryptolepine interact with adenine–thymine base pair. There is also a possibility of formation of \( p-p \) charge transfer complex between purine–pyrimidine bases and cryptolepine and electron environment.

![Structure of Cryptolepine.](image)

Another interesting antimalarial compound, \textit{tubulosine} was found active \textit{in vitro} against both sensitive and resistant strains of \textit{P. falciparum}. The indole moiety in tubulosine enhances the affinity for protozoan receptor, when compared with psychotrine and cephaeline. Extracts from \textit{Triphophyllum peltatum} led to the isolation of \textit{dioncophylline B and dioncophylline C} both exhibiting high antiplasmodial activity (Fig. 5.43). Dioncophylline C cured malaria-infected mice completely after a 4-d oral treatment with 50 mg kg\(^{-1}\) d\(^{-1}\) without noticeable toxic effects.

![Structure of dioncophylline B and dioncophylline C.](image)

A bisbenzylisoquinoline alkaloid \textit{dehatrine} isolated from the wood of \textit{Beilschmiedia madang}, exhibited potent inhibitory activity (IC50 0.017 \( \mu \) M) against the proliferation of malaria pathogen \textit{P. falciparum}, which was comparable to quinine. Recently, a novel dimeric naphthylisoquinoline alkaloid heterodimer with antiplasmodial activity, \textit{korundamine A} has been isolated from \textit{Ancistrocladus korupensis} (Fig. 5.44).
Topotecan, an analog of a plant alkaloid, camptothecin discovered in the Chinese tree species Camptotheca acuminata, for the treatment of ovarian and small cell lung cancers (Fig. 5.45). Irinotecan, another chemical analog which has been developed from another plant alkaloid discovered in the same tree, C. acuminata, is used for the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.

(+)-Calanolide A and (-)-Calanolide B (costatolide) isolated from Calophyllum lanigerum and Calophyllum teysmanii, respectively. (+)-Calanolide A is currently in early clinical trials in the United States. Maytansine from Maytenus ilicifolia exhibits significant cytotoxic and antitumoral efficacy. Additionally, an ulcer-preventing effect has been demonstrated in both animal and human studies.
Michellamine B, from the leaves of Ancistrocladus korupensis, a vine found in the Korup rainforest region of southwest Cameroon, has undergone extensive preclinical study, but is considered too toxic for advancement to clinical trials (Fig. 5.46).

![Structure of Michellamine B.](image)

Homoharringtonine from Cephalotaxus harringtonia is used in acute nonlymphoblastic leukemia and chronic myelogenous leukemia (Fig. 5.47).

![Structure of Homoharringtonine.](image)

Ellipticine (Fig. 5.48) and related alkaloids, e.g. 9-methoxyellipticine are found in the bark of Ochrosia elliptica. Clinical trials with these alkaloids and a number of synthetic analogues showed them to be potent inhibitors of several cancerous disorders, but pre-clinical toxicology indicated a number of side-effects, including haemolysis and cardiovascular effects.
Evodiamine (Fig. 5.49) extracted from *Evodia elleryana*, inhibits cell proliferation and migration of several types of cancer cell lines, including leukemia human caucasian acute lymphoblastic leukaemia cell-line (CCRF-CEM) cells in a concentration-dependent manner with an IC50 of 0.57µM via apoptosis following microtubular cytoskeleton abrogation. Methanol extracts of various parts of *Evodia elleryana* inhibits the growth of a broad spectrum of bacteria. While the antibacterial principle here is unknown, one could reasonably expect that evodiamine and *rutaecarpine* (Fig. 5.50)-like quinazoline alkaloids are involved.
Rhizome of *Nuphar pumilum* contains dimeric sesquiterpene thioalkaloids, such as 6-hydroxythiobinupharidine, 6',6”-dihydroxythiobinupharidine, and 6-hydroxythionuphutline B (Figs. 5.51, 5.52), which inhibited the invasion of B16 melanoma cells across collagen-coated filters *in vitro* with IC50 0.029, 0.087, and 0.36µM, respectively, indicating a clear antimetastatic potential.

![Fig. 5.51 Structure of Thiobinupharidine.](image1)

![Fig. 5.52 Structure of 6-hydroxythionuphutline B.](image2)

*Nelumbo nucifera* elaborates antiviral isoquinolines (+)-1(R)-coclaurine (Fig. 5.53) and 1(S)-norcoclaurine, which inhibits the replication of HIV *in vitro* with EC50 values of 0.8 and <0.8g/µL, and therapeutic index values of >125 and >25, respectively. *Liensinine* (Fig. 5.54) and *isoliensinine* showed potent anti-Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) activities with EC50 values of <0.8g/µL and Therapeutic Index values of >9.9 and >6.5g/µL.
Phytochemicals

Nuciferine (Fig. 5.55), an aporphine alkaloid, had an EC50 value of 0.8g/µL and a Therapeutic Index value of 36. Isoliensinine exhibited a significant inhibitory effect on bleomycin-induced pulmonary fibrosis in male mice. The alkaloid lowered the hydroxyproline content and limited the lung histological injury induced by bleomycin, and also inhibited the overexpression of TNF-α and TGF-β induced by bleomycin, and showed potent activity against bleomycin-induced pulmonary fibrosis.
**Cappamansin A** (Fig. 5.56), from the roots of *Capparis sikkimensis* subsp. *formosana* has encouraged potently the survival of ovarian (1A9), lung (A549), ileocecal (HCT-8), breast (MCF-7), nasopharyngeal (KB), and vincristine resistant (KB-VIN) human tumor cell lines cultured *in vitro*.

![Fig. 5.56 Structure of Cappamansin A.](image)

**Tetrandrine** (Fig. 5.57), a bis-benzyl isoquinoline alkaloid, isolated from the roots of *Stephania tetrandra*, showed that it not only inhibits Hep G2 growth but also induced apoptosis and blocked cell cycle progression in the GI phase.

![Fig. 5.57 Structure of Tetrandrine.](image)

**Cassaine** is a cardiotoxic alkaloid in *Erythrophloeum guinnense* (Fig. 5.58). It causes anorexia, defective vision, increases heart sounds and dyspnoea.

![Fig. 5.58 Structure of Cassaine.](image)
Frangulanine, a cyclopeptide alkaloid from Hovenia dulcis induces mitochondrial swelling in 0.5 M KCl solution at the concentration at 6.5µM. The alkaloid showed ion selectivity on the induction of mitochondrial swelling. Ion specific pores are involved in sodium-potassium transport. Ion specific pores in the membrane are blocked by frangulanine, which acts as an ionophore for potassium. Vertine the principal alkaloid of Heimia salicifolia has anti-inflammatory activity.

Dicentra cucullaria contains isoquinoline alkaloids: including bicuculline, corlumine, protopine, cryptopine, and cularine. Liriodendron tulipifera contains isoquinoline alkaloids (0.1%), particularly of the aporphine type: including remerine, lysicamine, liriodenine, and lanugosine. The alkaloid violine from Viola odorata has an emetine-like effect. Quassia amara contains indole alkaloids of: beta-carboline type, including 1-vinyl-4, 8-dimethoxy-beta-carboline and canthinone type, including 2-methoxy-6-one, 3-methylnanthine-5, 6-dione.

Sambucus ebulus is reported to quinolizidine alkaloids: cytisine, methylcytisine, anagyrine, isosparteine, lupanine, and tinctorine. Lupinus luteus contains quinolizidine alkaloids including sparteine, lupinine and p-cumaroyllupinine. Lupinine and benzoyllupinine are reported to be anthelmintic.

Areca alkaloids

The major stimulant alkaloid of Areca catechu is arecoline (up to 0.2%) (Fig. 5.59), the remainder of the alkaloid content (total about 0.45%) being composed of arecaidine, guvacine, and guvacoline. Arecoline is an agonist for muscarinic acetylcholine receptors. Arecoline has been employed in veterinary practice as a vermicide to eradicate worms.

![Fig. 5.59 Structure of Areca alkaloids.](image)

Ashwagandha alkaloids (see Solanaceae alkaloids also)

Withania somnifera contains alkaloids including anagrine, anaferine, cuscolugraine, hygrine, isopelletriene, pseudopelletriene, 3α-togloxytropine, 3-tropyltigloate, tropine and withasomnine and visamine (Fig. 5.60). Acute toxicity of W. somnifera alkaloids is modest. A 180-day study involving rats found unfavorable increases in catecholamine content of the heart and decreases in the adrenal glands.
Ephedra alkaloids

The plants typically contain 0.5–2.0% of alkaloids, according to species, and from 30–90% of the total alkaloids is (-)-ephedrine. Related structures, including thendiastereoisomeric (+)-pseudoephedrine and the demethyl analogues (-)-norpseudoephedrine and (+)-norpseudoephedrine are also present. In Ephedra intermedia, the proportion of pseudoephedrine exceeds that of ephedrine.

Ephedrine (Fig. 5.61) is an indirectly acting sympathomimetic amine with effects similar to noradrenaline. Lacking the phenolic groups of the catecholamines, it has only weak action on adrenoreceptors, but it is able to displace noradrenaline from storage vesicles in the nerve terminals, which can then act on receptors. It also has bronchodilator activity, giving relief in asthma. It has vasoconstrictor action on mucous membranes, making it an effective nasal decongestant.
**Pseudoephedrine** is also widely used in compound cough and cold preparations and as a decongestant.

**Ergot alkaloids (Claviceps purpurea)**

The ergot sclerotia contain from 0.15–0.5% alkaloids, and more than 50 have been characterized. The medicinally useful compounds are derivatives of (+) - lysergic acid. There are three classes of ergot alkaloids: the ergotamine group consisting of **ergotamine, ergosine** and the corresponding isomers the ergotoxine group consisting of **ergocornine, ergocristine, ergokryptine** and their isomers **ergometrine** and its isomer. **Ergotamine** (ergonovine) finds application in anti migraine prescriptions (Fig. 5.62). It is a partial agonist of $\alpha$-adrenoceptors and 5-HT receptors. It is not suitable for obstetric use because it also produces a pronounced peripheral vasoconstrictor action. Ergometrine is used as an oxytocic, and is injected during the final stages of labor and immediately following childbirth, especially if hemorrhaging occurs. Bleeding is reduced because of its vasoconstrictor effects, and it is valuable after Caesarian operations.

![Fig. 5.62 Structure of Ergotamine.](image)

**Cevadilla alkaloids**

They are obtained from *Schoenacaulon officinale*. The alkaloids include **cevadine** (veratrine), **veratridine** (veraine), **sabadilline** (cevadilline), **sabadine** and **sabadinine**. Cevadine is toxic and used externally as an insecticidal.

**Cinchona alkaloids**

A considerable number of alkaloids have been characterized in the cinchona bark, four of which account for some 30–60% of the alkaloid content. These are quinine, quinidine, cinchonidine, and cinchonine (Fig. 5.63).
Quinine is extremely bitter, and also possesses antipyretic, analgesic and anti-inflammatory properties. While quinine is still the drug of choice for the treatment of Falciparum malaria, it can be also used to treat nocturnal leg cramps and arthritis. It can cause various side-effects like nausea, vomiting, cinchonism, and rarely, pulmonary oedema.

Quinidine is used in the treatment of cardiac arrhythmia. Intravenous injection of quinidine is also used in the treatment of Plasmodium falciparum malaria. Thrombocytopenia is the major adverse effect.

**Coca alkaloids**

Coca leaves are obtained from species of *Erythroxylum coca* and *E. truxillense*. Coca leaf contains 0.7–2.5% of alkaloids, the chief component (-)-**cocaaine** (Fig. 5.64). It is a potent central nervous system stimulant and appetite suppressant. For its euphoretic effect, cocaine is often used recreationally, and it is one of the most common drugs of abuse and addiction. Cocaine is used as a topical anaesthetic in eye, throat and nose surgery. In overdose, it leads to tachyarrhythmia and hypertension.
**Conium alkaloids**

The major alkaloid (about 90%) is the volatile liquid *coniine*, with smaller amounts of structurally related piperidine alkaloids, including *N*-methylconine and γ-coniceine. Coniine contributes to the foul smell of hemlock. It is a neurotoxin, causes respiratory paralysis and is toxic to all classes of livestock and humans. In 399 BC, Socrates was put to death by this poison (Fig. 5.65).

![Fig. 5.65 Structure of Conium alkaloids.](image)

**Curare alkaloids**

These are obtained from *Chondrodendron tomentosum*. (+) *tubocurarine* (Fig. 2.6) is the principal alkaloid. In addition, it contains *chondrocurarine, isochondrodendrine, curine, curarine, cylleanine and tomentocurarine*. (+) tubocurarine is a strong neuromuscular blocking agent.

**Ibogona alkaloids (Terbernanthe iboga)**

The root bark contains up to 6% indole alkaloids, the principal component of which is *ibogaine*. Ibogaine is a CNS stimulant, and is also psychoactive. In large doses, it can cause paralysis and respiratory arrest. Ibogaine is of interest as a potential drug for relieving heroin craving in drug addicts (Fig. 5.66).

![Fig. 5.66 Structure of Ibogaine.](image)

**Ipecac alkaloids**

These are obtained from dried root of *Cephalis ipecacunaha*. The chief alkaloids are emetine, cephaline and psychotrine (Fig. 5.67). *Cephaline* is a reduction product of *psychotrine*. The actions of emetine, cephaline are similar; psychotrine is inert. *Emetine* is specific for amoebic dysentery.
Nux-vomica alkaloids
These seeds contain 1.5–5% of alkaloids, chiefly *strychnine* (about 1.2%) and *brucine* (about 1.6%). *Strychnine* (Fig. 2.6) is very toxic, affecting the CNS and causing convulsions. This is a result of binding to receptor sites in the spinal cord that normally accommodate glycine. Its only medicinal use is in very small doses as an appetite stimulant and general tonic, sometimes with iron salts if the patient is anaemic. *Brucine* (Fig. 5.14) is considerably less toxic. Distribution of strychnine and brucine in various species of Strychnos is tabulated below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Strychnine</th>
<th>Brucine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Strychnos nux-blanda</em></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strychnos tieute</em></td>
<td>1.4%</td>
<td>traces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strychnos nux-vomica</em></td>
<td>1.23%</td>
<td>1.55%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strychnos lucida</em></td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>1.5–2.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Strychnos ignatti</em></td>
<td>1.23%</td>
<td>1.55%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kurchi alkaloids
These are obtained from *Holarrhena antidysenterica*. They include *connesine* (Fig. 5.68), *holarrhenine, kurchine, kurchicine conkurchine, conesimine, holarrhine, holarrhimine, conimine and isoconessimine*. Steroidal alkaloids, *antidysentericine, regholarrhenine-A, regholarrhenine-B and regholarrhenine- C* have been isolated from *H. antidysenterica*. In castor oil-induced diarrhea, the alkaloids reduced the diarrhea.
**Opium alkaloids**

Although the ripe poppy (*Papaver somniferum*) capsule can contain up to 0.5% total alkaloids, opium represents a much more concentrated form and up to 25% of its mass is composed of alkaloids. Of the 40 alkaloids identified, about 6 represent almost all of the total alkaloid content. A typical commercial sample of opium would probably have a morphine content of about 12%. Powdered opium is standardized to contain 10% of anhydrous morphine.

**Morphine** (Fig. 2.6) is a powerful analgesic and narcotic, and remains one of the most valuable analgesics for relief of severe pain.

**Codeine** (Fig. 5.5) is a relatively safe non-addictive medium analgesic, but is too constipating for long-term use. Codeine also has valuable antitussive action, helping to relieve and prevent coughing. It effectively depresses the cough center, raising the threshold for sensory cough impulses.

**Papaverine** (Fig. 5.6) possesses spasmolytic and vasodilator activity. **Noscapine** has good antitussive and cough suppressant activity comparable to that of codeine, but no analgesic or narcotic action.

**Pilocarpus alkaloids**

*Pilocarpus microphyllus* is currently the main source. The alkaloid content (0.5–1.0%) consists principally of the imidazole alkaloid *pilocarpine*; together with small amounts of *pilosine* (Fig. 5.69). Pilocarpine salts are valuable in ophthalmic practice and are used in eyedrops as miotics and for the treatment of glaucoma. Pilocarpine is a cholinergic agent and stimulates the muscarinic receptors in the eye, causing constriction of the pupil and enhancement of outflow of aqueous humour.
Psilocybe alkaloids (Psilocybe maxicana)
The active hallucinogens, present at about 0.3%, are the tryptamine derivatives psilocybin and psilocin, which are structurally related to the neurotransmitter, 5-hydroxytryptamine, the factor contributing to their neurological effects (Fig. 5.70).

Resperine alkaloids (Rauwolfia serpentina)
Reserpine and deserpidine (Fig. 5.71) have been widely used as antihypertensive and mild tranquillizers. They act by interfering with catecholamine storage, depleting levels of available neurotransmitters. Prolonged use of reserpine has been shown to lead to severe depression in some patients, a feature not so prevalent when the powdered root was employed. Both ajmalicine (Fig. 5.71) and ajmaline are used clinically in Europe. Ajmalicine is employed as an antihypertensive, whilst ajmaline is of value in the treatment of cardiac arrhythmias.
Tobacco alkaloids

Tobacco is the cured and dried leaves of *Nicotiana tabacum*. Tobacco leaves may contain from 0.6–9% of *(-)-nicotine*, an oily, volatile liquid alkaloid, together with smaller amounts *anabasine* and *nornicotine* (Fig. 5.72). It also contains *N-formyl nor-nicotine*, *cotinine*, *myosmine*, *nicotyrine*, *anabasine* and *nicotelline*.

In lower concentrations, nicotine is a stimulant, i.e. it increases activity, alertness and memory, and this is one of the main factors that contribute to the dependence-forming properties of tobacco smoking. Nicotine increases the heart-rate and blood pressure, and reduces appetite. In higher doses, nicotine acts as a depressant.
Vasaka alkaloids

These are obtained from Adhatoda vasica. They include vasicine (Fig. 5.6), adhatodine, and vascinone (Fig. 5.73). Vasicine is a quinazoline alkaloid, bitter in taste and occurs in crystalline form. It is soluble in chloroform. Oxidation of vasicine leads to formation of vascinone. Other alkaloids include anisotine, 3-hydroxyanisotine, vanestine, desmethoxyaniflorine and desmethoxyvascinone. Vasicine reduces ovalbumin and platelet activating factor induced allergic reactions. Vasicine has significant anti-inflammatory and abortifacient activity.
Vasicine yield from various samples in India ranged from 0.541 to 1.105% on a dry basis. Yield as high as 2.18% was reported from a foreign sample of which more than half was the l-form and remainder dl-form of the alkaloid. The plant shows wide seasonal variation in vasicine content in its leaves. High concentration is attained twice in a year (3% in March and 1.4% in September), which coincides with the flowering stage of the medicinal plant. During the vegetative stage, the plant contained very low concentration of the alkaloid.

Caltha alkaloids

*Cathine* and *cathionine* are obtained from *Caltha edulis* (Fig. 5.74). Cathine is analeptic and bronchodilator.

![Structure of Cathine and Cathionine](Fig. 5.74 Structure of Cathine and Cathionine)

Gelsemium alkaloids

*Gelsemine* and *gelseminine* are obtained from *Gelsemium semepervirens* (Fig. 5.75). They act like strychnine. Other alkaloids include 21-oxygelsemine, gelsemicine, gelsidine, gelsevirine, and sempervirine.

![Structure of Gelsemine and Gelseminine](Fig. 5.75 Structure of Gelsemine and Gelseminine)

Harman alkaloids

*Harmanline* (harmandine), *harmine* (banisterine) and *harmalol* are obtained from *Peganum harmala* (Fig. 5.76). They are oxytocic in action.
Jasminum alkaloids

**Jasminine** and **jasminidine** are obtained from *Jasminum grandiflorum* (Fig. 5.77).

![Jasminine and Jasminidine](image)

Vinca alkaloids

*Catharanthus roseus* is known as the common or Madagascar periwinkle. Formerly, it was classified as *Vinca rosea*. It is a perennial evergreen herb in Apocynaceae and originally native to the island of Madagascar. In all 70 alkaloids have been identified in periwinkle. Some have anticancer and hypoglycemic properties. Some act as hemostatics (arrest bleeding).

Two groups began working independently on periwinkle in 1950s when they heard of a tea which Jamaicans drank to treat diabetes. Beer and Noble from the University of Western Ontario became interested in the plant as a possible ‘oral insulin’—they isolated alkaloid—**vinblastine**.

Svoboda injected a crude extract of the whole periwinkle plant into mice that were infected with P-1534 leukemia. The mice (60–80%)
experienced a prolonged life. Lilly produced vinblastine as the drug Velban and also synthesized another alkaloid, vincristine (Fig. 5.78). In the first human test in 1960, a 49 yr old man dying of Hodgkin’s disease, was walking within a week and 4 mon later the tumor disappeared. Vinblastine (Fig. 5.78) has been especially effective for treating Hodgkin’s disease. It is the first drug of choice in the treatment of many forms of leukemia and since the 1950’s it has increased the survival rate of childhood leukemias by 80%. Vincristine has been especially effective for treating acute childhood leukemia, often with 99% remission rates.

Vinblastine, vincristine, and two semi-synthetic derivatives (vindesine and vinorelbine) all have the same mode of action. They inhibit mitosis in metaphase by binding tubulin. Vinblastine binds to tubulin dimmers in a 1:1 ratio and prevents microtubule formation. Other alkaloids which bind to tubulin include colchicine, maytansine and mescaline, but they have been studied much less than Vinblastine. Vinblastine also seems to fight cancer by interfering with glutamic acid metabolism. They are all administered intravenously once a week. The compounds can be fatal if they are administered any other way, and can cause a lot of tissue irritation if they leak out of the vein.

**Fig. 5.78** Structure of Vinca alkaloids.
Cepharanthine makes membrane more stable by inhibiting peroxidation of their lipids. Carbazole alkaloids, glycoborinine, glycozoline and glycozolidine are reported from roots of Glycomis arborea (Fig. 5.79).

Lunasia amara contains quinoline alkaloids, such as lunacridine, which would be worth investigating for pharmacology (Fig. 5.80).

Buchanine, a novel pyridine alkaloid has been reported from Cryptolepis buchanani. Boldoa fragrans contains isolquinoline alkaloid, boldine (Fig. 5.81). Tribulus terrestris contains β-carboline alkaloid, tribulusterine (Fig. 5.82).
Phytochemicals

Crinasiatine, crisiaticidine-A, isocraugsodine, lycoriside and palmilycorine have been reported from Crinum asiaticum (Figs. 5.83, 5.84). The plant also contains lycorine.

5-hydroxymethyl-1-1 (1, 2, 3, 9-tetrahydro-pyrrolo [21-b] quinazolin-1-yl)-heptan-1-one is reported to be the bioactive alkaloid of Sida cordifolia (Fig. 5.85). It has analgesic and anti-inflammatory activities.

Wilfordine, wilfortrine, wiforgine and wilforine are major alkaloids of immunomodulator Chinese drug, Tripterygium wilfordii. Chakranine is an alkaloid isolated from Bragantia wallichii. Colycotomine is alkaloid of Acacia sinuata. A great variety of isoquinoline alkaloids like protopine and stypoline have been isolated from Corydalis govaniana (Fig. 5.86). The plant also contains corydaline.
Jateorrhiza columba (Cocculus palmata) contains several isoquinoline alkaloids including cocculine, columbamine, jatorrhizine, plamatine and umbellatine (Fig. 5.87). Cocculus hirsutus is reported to contain cohirstine, cohirsinine, cohirsininone, jamatinine and haiderine. Cosculine from the stem and leaves of Cocculus pendulus, is active against the cells derived from human epidermoid carcinoma of nasopharynx.

![Fig. 5.87 Structure of alkaloids of Jateorrhiza columba.](image)

Ricinine (Fig.5.88) and N-demethyl-ricinine, isolated from leaf extract of Ricinus communis have significant hepatoprotective, choleretic and anticholestatic activity.

![Fig. 5.88 Structure of Ricinine.](image)

Major alkaloids of Fumaria parviflora include protopine, cryptopine, sanguinarine, fumaridine, fumaramine, parfumine and fumariline. Sanguinarine is antimicrobial. Theobromine and theophylline from Theobroma cocoa are well-reputed bronchodilators (Fig. 5.89). Voacangine
and *mitragynine*, isolated from *Voacanga africana* and *Mitragyna ciliata*, respectively, are potential analgesic agents. *Nitidine* isolated from *Toddalia asiatica* has potential antiHIV activity (Fig. 5.89).

![Fig. 5.89 Structure of Nitidine.](attachment:image.png)

*Huperzine-A* from *Lycopodium (Huperzia) serrata* and *galantamine* obtained from *Galanthes nivalis*, respectively, have anticholinesterase activity and are used in Alzheimer’s dementia (Figs. 5.90, 5.91).

![Fig. 5.90 Structure of Huperzine-A.](attachment:image.png)

![Fig. 5.91 Structure of Galantamine.](attachment:image.png)

The bulb of *Haemanthus albiflos* contains alkaloids including *lycorenine* and *tazettine*. *Hamelia patens* contain oxindole alkaloids including *palmirine* and *rumberine*. *Heimia salicifolia* contains alkaloids including *lythrine, sinicuichine, heimine, nesodine, sinine (lythrindine),*
Vertine and cryogenine. Cryogenine decreases spontaneous motor activity, hypothermia, blepharoptosis and ataxia. Lythrine and vertine are diuretic. Adina cordifolia contains alkaloids including adifoline, cordifoline, 10-deoxy cordifoline and 10-deoxy adifoline. Adifoline is a central nervous system depressant and hypotensive in experimental animals.

Solanaceous alkaloids

Solanaceous is one of the medicinally important families, many plants of these possess narcotic properties and constitute the drugs used in indigenous systems with great ethnobotanical diversity. The alkaloids isolated from the plants of Solanaceae have been successfully utilized in modern medicine particularly ophthalmic practice.

Atropa belladonna contains 0.3–0.6% of alkaloids, mainly (-)-hyoscyamine. Belladonna root has only slightly higher alkaloid content at 0.4% mainly (-)-hyoscyamine. Minor alkaloids including (-)-hyoscine and cuscohygrine are also found in the root. The Datura stramonium leaf usually contains 0.2–0.45% of alkaloids, principally (-)-hyoscyamine and (-)-hyoscine in a ratio of about 2:1. Datura sanguinea, yields leaf material with a high (0.8%) alkaloid content in which the principal component is (-)-hyoscine. Datura meteloides contain meteloidine (Fig. 5.92). The alkaloid content of hyoscyamus is relatively low at 0.045–0.14%, but this can be composed of similar proportions of (-)-hyoscyamine and (-)-hyoscyamine. Egyptian henbane, Hyoscyamus muticus, has much higher alkaloid content than H. niger.

![Fig. 5.92 Structure of Meteloidine.](image)

The alkaloids distributed in Solanaceae are of tropine or pyridine type. Tropine alkaloids are formed by combination of Tropic acid and Tropine. Tropine alkaloids are tropane derivatives. Some alkaloids are pyridine (cuscohygrine) or piperidine (isopelliterine) derivatives. Depending upon the basic nucleus, the alkaloids found in Solaneacea are classified into the following types:
1. Soladulcidine type
2. Solasodine type
3. Tomatidenol type.

The majority of alkaloids have anticholinergic activity. They act by inhibiting acetylcholine. *Atropine* (Fig. 5.5) is used as a mydriatic (to dilate the pupil) in ophthalmic practice and as an antidote to morphine poisoning. *Hyoscine* (Fig. 5.5) is used as an antispasmodic and the salt available is hyoscine butyl bromide. Hyoscine also has a significant anti-emetic effect, and that is why it is used for the treatment of motion sickness.

Withania alkaloids deserve special mention. *Isopelletrine* has antihelmenthic activity whereas *somniferine* is a sedative. The total alkaloids of roots have a variety of pharmacological actions. In animal models, the alkaloids have shown hypotensive and analeptic activity. Solasodine has glucocorticoid-like effects, hypocholesterolaemic and antiatherosclerotic activity. Nicotine exists in liquid form that is resorbed through the skin.

The majority of alkaloids are toxic. 100 mg of atropine is sufficient for killing a person as it causes respiratory distress. *Daturine* alkaloid present in *Datura alba* and other species, accounts for the toxicology of *Datura*. Daturine is converted into atropine in the human body and it causes death from asphyxiation. *Solasodine* possesses embryotoxic activity and cumulative effects. The toxicity (LD50) in mice orally is 27.5 mg/kg. Solanine is a protoplastic poison, which acts on amoeboid cells of the body and causes hemolysis. It has been used as an agricultural poison.

*Scopolamine* and *hyoscyamine* (Fig. 5.5) also possess toxic activity and poisoning causes delirium, which is due to central nervous system excitation. Nicotine is a well-known toxic substance. Common symptoms of poisoning with Solanaceous alkaloids include restlessness, delirium, mania, hallucinations, asphyxiation, sleep, urinary problems, constipation and death. *Cestrum diurnum* contains alkaloids including *nicotine* and *nornicotine* (Fig. 5.72) *Cestrum nocturnum* contains alkaloids including nornicotine, *cotinine* and *myosmine*.

Table 5.2 indicates the lethal dose (LD50) of therapeutically important alkaloids of Solanaceae.
Table 5.2 LD50 values of therapeutically active alkaloids found in Solanaceae.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SNo.</th>
<th>Name of alkaloid</th>
<th>LD50</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Atropine</td>
<td>400mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Hyoscyamine</td>
<td>375mg/kg (i.p)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Hyoscine</td>
<td>700–1,300mg/kg (s.c.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Homatropine</td>
<td>6783mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Nicotine</td>
<td>0.3 mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Solasonine (Solanine)</td>
<td>2.8mg/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Solasodine</td>
<td>27.5mg/kg (orally)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Tomantine (Lycopersicin)</td>
<td>80mg/kg (orally)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

i.p = intraperitoneal, s.c = subcutaneous.
Phytochemicals

Fig. 5.93 Alkaloids of Solanaceae (see Fig. 1.4 also).

*Solanum dulcamara* contains steroid alkaloid glycosides (0.07 to 0.4%). The alkaloid spectrum differs widely with the variety. Tomatidenol variety—α-solamarine, β-solamarine. Soladulcidine variety—soladulcidinetetraoside. Solasodine variety—solasonine and solamargine. The chief alkaloids of *Solanum nigrum* include solasonine, solamargine, and P-solamargine.

**Lobelia alkaloids**

*Lobelia inflata* contains about 0.2–0.4% of alkaloids, of which the piperidine derivative *lobeline* (Fig. 5.73) is the chief constituent. Minor alkaloids identified include *lobelanine* (Fig. 5.94).

**Convolvulaceae alkaloids**

*Convolamine* and *convolvine* are obtained from Convolvulus sp. They have anesthetic activity. *Elymoclavine* is obtained from *Ipomoea nil* (Fig. 5.95).
Alkaloids are present in many plants ranging from non-poisonous forms to highly fatal toxic forms. Pyrrolizidine alkaloids are one such type, which are highly toxic principles present in Boraginaceae, Compositae, and Leguminosae families. The intoxication is caused by the oral intake of the plants containing the alkaloids either in food or medicinal form. Plants containing pyrrolizidine alkaloids are sometimes contaminated with agricultural crops also.
At least 100 types of pyrrolizidine alkaloids are present in plants. The majority of them are hepatotoxic. The varied manifestations of liver injury caused by pyrrolizidine alkaloids containing herbs are acute and chronic hepatitis, steatosis, hepatic fibrosis, zonal or diffuse hepatic necrosis, bile duct injury, veno-occlusive disease, acute liver failure, and carcinogenesis.

*Teucrium chamaedrys* (germander) causes severe, acute hepatocellular injury. Traditionally it has been used for reducing weight. An elevated level of aminotransferase enzyme has been observed after the intake of the drug. The toxic principle of the herb has not been detected but the presence of pyrrolizidine alkaloids has been postulated.

*Symphytum officinale* (comfrey) contains a number of pyrolizidine alkaloids including *echinatin*, *lycopsamine*, *7-acetyllycopsamine*, *echimidine*, *lasiocarpine*, *symphytine* and *intremedine*. Due to the presence of pyrolizidine alkaloids, the use of the drug has been banned in number of countries. The comfrey alkaloids have hepatotoxic and carcinogenic potential. Some companies are introducing pyrrolizidine alkaloid free comfrey extracts.

*Cynoglossum officinale* (Hound’s tongue) is also known to contain pyrrolizidine alkaloids including *heliosupine*, *7-angeloylheliotridine* and *acetylheliosupine*. The herb in experiments has shown that it induces paralysis in peripheral nerve endings in frogs. The exact cause of this is not known, but because of the presence of the pyrrolizidine alkaloids in the herb, the use should be abolished.

The following genera also contain pyrrolizidine alkaloids *Senecio longilobus*, *Lycopodium serratum*, *Heliotropium eichwaldii*, *Helitropium indicum*, *Larrea maxima* (chaparral), *Crotolaria assamica*, *Crotolaria juncea*, *Crotolaria retusa*, *Eupatorium* sp., *Alkanna tinctoria* (alkanna) *Mentha pulegium* and *Tussilaga farfara* (Colt’s foot).

All human beings are believed to be susceptible to hepatotoxic pyrrolizidine alkaloids. Home remedies and consumption of herbal teas in large quantities can be a risk factor and are the most likely cause of alkaloid poisonings. Evidence of toxicity may not become apparent until sometime after the alkaloid is ingested. The acute illness has been compared to the Budd-Chiari syndrome (thrombosis of hepatic veins, leading to liver enlargement, portal hypertension, and ascites).

Early clinical signs include nausea and acute upper gastric pain, acute abdominal distension with prominent dilated veins on the abdominal wall, fever, and biochemical evidence of liver dysfunction. Fever and jaundice may be present. In some cases the lungs are affected; pulmonary edema and pleural effusions have been observed. Lung damage may be prominent and has been fatal. Chronic illness from ingestion of small
amounts of the alkaloids over a long period proceeds through fibrosis of
the liver to cirrhosis, which is indistinguishable from cirrhosis of other
etiology.

Indicine

Monocrotaline

Senecionine

Seneciphylline

Tussilagine
Fig. 5.96 Structure of common pyrrolizidine alkaloids.

Table 5.3 Summary of alkaloids studied from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the alkaloid</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>(+) – Tiliarine</td>
<td><em>Tilacora racemosa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Acalyphine</td>
<td><em>Acalypha indica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Acetylmacroalstonine</td>
<td><em>Alstonia macrophylla</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Aconitine</td>
<td><em>Aconitum napellus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Adhatodine</td>
<td><em>Adhatoda vasica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Ajamlicine</td>
<td><em>Rauwolfia serpentina</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Ajmaline</td>
<td><em>Rauwolfia serpentina</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Alangine</td>
<td><em>Alangium lamarkii</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Anabasine</td>
<td><em>Withania somnifera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Anagyrine</td>
<td><em>Withania somnifera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Arbroflorine</td>
<td><em>Kopsia arborea</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Argemonine</td>
<td><em>Argemone mexicana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Atisine</td>
<td><em>Aconitum heterophyllum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Atropine</td>
<td><em>Atropoa belladonna</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Berbamine</td>
<td><em>Berberis aristata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Berberine</td>
<td><em>Berberis aristata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Brucine</td>
<td><em>Strychnos nux vomicina</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Bufotenine</td>
<td><em>Mucuna pruriens</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Carpaine</td>
<td><em>Carica papaya</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.3 contd...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the alkaloid</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Cerepegin</td>
<td>Ceropegia juncea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Cimipronidine</td>
<td>Cimicifuga racemosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Cissampariene</td>
<td>Cissampelos pareira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Codeine</td>
<td>Papaver somniferum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Colchicine</td>
<td>Colchicum leuteum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Conessine</td>
<td>Halorrhena antidysenterica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Coptine</td>
<td>Coptis teeta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Cosquisagenine</td>
<td>Ruta graveolens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Cuscohygrine</td>
<td>Withania somnifera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Cynaustraline</td>
<td>Cynoglossum lanceolatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Cynaustrine</td>
<td>Cynoglossum lanceolatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Daturine</td>
<td>Datura alba, D. innoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Delphinine</td>
<td>Peganum harmala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Desoxypeganine</td>
<td>Alstonia scholaris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Ditamine</td>
<td>Eclipta alba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Echitamine</td>
<td>Alstonia scholaris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Ecliptine</td>
<td>Alstonia scholaris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Elymoclavine</td>
<td>Ipomoea nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Ephedrine</td>
<td>Ephedra sinica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Ergoclavine</td>
<td>Claviceps purpurea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Ergotamine</td>
<td>Claviceps purpurea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Erthyocentaurine</td>
<td>Enicostemma hyssopifolium, Swertia lauri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>Erytherine</td>
<td>Erythrina indica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Fumarine</td>
<td>Fumaria officinalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Gagaminine</td>
<td>Cynanchum wolforii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Gentianadine</td>
<td>Gentiana lutea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>Gentianaine</td>
<td>Gentiana lutea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Gentianamine</td>
<td>Gentiana lutea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Gentianine</td>
<td>Gentiana lutea, Gentiana kurroa, Swertia chirpata and Trigonella foneum-graecum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Gentiatibetine</td>
<td>Gentiana lutea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.No</td>
<td>Name of the alkaloid</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>Gentitialutine</td>
<td><em>Gentiana lutea</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Graveoline</td>
<td><em>Ruta graveolans</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Gymnamine</td>
<td><em>Gymnema sylvestre</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Harmaline</td>
<td><em>Peganum harmala</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Harmine</td>
<td><em>Peganum harmala</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>Herpestine</td>
<td><em>Bacopa monniera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Hetisine</td>
<td><em>Aconitum heterophyllum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>Hetratisine</td>
<td><em>Aconitum heterophyllum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Hygrine</td>
<td><em>Withania somnifera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Hyoscine</td>
<td><em>Hyoscyamus niger</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Hyoscyamine</td>
<td><em>Hyoscyamus niger</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Icajine</td>
<td><em>Strychnos nux vomica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>Laurotetanine</td>
<td><em>Litsoea sabifera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>Macrocaprpamine</td>
<td><em>Alstonia macrophylla</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>Mimosine</td>
<td><em>Mimosa pudica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>Momordicine</td>
<td><em>Momordica charnattia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>Monnierin</td>
<td><em>Bacopa monniera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>Moringine</td>
<td><em>Moringa olfera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td><em>Papaver somniferum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>Muscarine</td>
<td><em>Agaricus muscaria</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>Napelline</td>
<td><em>Aconitum ferox</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>Narceine</td>
<td><em>Papaver somniferum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>Narcotine</td>
<td><em>Papaver somniferum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Nicotine</td>
<td><em>Nicotina tabaccum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Nigellidine</td>
<td><em>Nigella sativa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Noscapine</td>
<td><em>Papaver somniferum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
<td>Nyctanthine</td>
<td><em>Nyctanthes arbor-tristis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Oroxylin</td>
<td><em>Oroxylum indicum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>Oxycanthine</td>
<td><em>Berberis aristata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.</td>
<td>Papaverine</td>
<td><em>Papaver somniferum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>Pareirubrine</td>
<td><em>Cissampelos pareira</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.3 contd...
Table 5.3 contd...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the alkaloid</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>81.</td>
<td>Pelletrine</td>
<td>Punica granatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82.</td>
<td>Pelosine</td>
<td>Cissampelos pareira</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Phyllanthine</td>
<td>Phyllanthus niruri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Phyllurine</td>
<td>Phyllanthus urinaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>Piperidine</td>
<td>Piper nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>Piperine</td>
<td>Piper nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>Precatorine</td>
<td>Abrus precatorius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>Premnazole</td>
<td>Gmelina arborea, Premna integrifolia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89.</td>
<td>Protopine</td>
<td>Papaver somniferum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>Pseudopelletrine</td>
<td>Withania somnifera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>Pseudostrychynine</td>
<td>Strychnos nux vomica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>Punarnavine</td>
<td>Boehria diffusa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>Pyrethrin</td>
<td>Anacyclus pyrethrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>Quinidine</td>
<td>Cinchona officinalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>Quinine</td>
<td>Cinchona officinalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96.</td>
<td>Rescinnamine</td>
<td>Rauwolfia serpentina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97.</td>
<td>Reserpine</td>
<td>Rauwolfia serpentina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>Ricinine</td>
<td>Ricinus communis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99.</td>
<td>Ruine</td>
<td>Peganum harmala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>Salvadorine</td>
<td>Savadora presica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>Saussurine</td>
<td>Saussurea lappa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.</td>
<td>Serpentine</td>
<td>Rauwolfia serpentina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103.</td>
<td>Serpentinine</td>
<td>Rauwolfia serpentina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104.</td>
<td>Skimmianine</td>
<td>Ruta graveolens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.</td>
<td>Solanine</td>
<td>Solanum nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106.</td>
<td>Strychnine</td>
<td>Strychnos nux vomica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.</td>
<td>Superbine</td>
<td>Gloriosa superba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.</td>
<td>Theabine</td>
<td>Papaver somniferum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109.</td>
<td>Trigonelline</td>
<td>Trigonella fonceum- graceum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110.</td>
<td>Tropine</td>
<td>Withania somnifera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111.</td>
<td>Tylophorine</td>
<td>Tylophora asthamatica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.No</td>
<td>Name of the alkaloid</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112.</td>
<td>Vasicine</td>
<td>Adhatoda vasica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.</td>
<td>Vasicinone</td>
<td>Adhatoda vasica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.</td>
<td>Villalstonine</td>
<td>Alstonia macrophylla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.</td>
<td>Vomicine</td>
<td>Strychnos nux vomica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.</td>
<td>Withasomnine</td>
<td>Newbouldia leavis, Withania somnifera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.4.3 Bitters (including quassonoids and limonoids)

Bitter principles are basically glycosides and are found commonly in plants of Genitiaceae. They are chemically unrelated but possess the common property of an intensely bitter taste. Although this group of drugs is not used today, but in earlier days were given to promote appetite and aid digestion. The bitters act on gustatory nerves, which results in increased flow of saliva and gastric juices (Fig. 5.97).

From the point of view of chemistry, the bitter principles contain lactone group. They may be diterpene lactones e.g., *andrographolide* or triterpenoids e.g., *amarogentin*. The bitters have no action in general. The structure of *tinosporinine*, the bitter constituent of *Tinospora malabarica* is shown in Fig. 5.97.

![Amarogentin](image_url)
Fig. 5.97 Structure of important bitter principles.
Some bitter principles are known to be astringent due to the presence of tannic acid. *Gentiana lutea* is the plant known to contain astringent bitter principles. They should not be prescribed with metals, as they are known to cause gastro-intestinal problems. Some such as, *amarogentin* has recently received importance because of antiprotozoal activity. *Gentiopicrin* is said to reduce thyroxine and metabolism (Fig. 5.99).

*Andrographolide* has potent hepatoprotective activity. It is however missing in *A. echioides*. *Ailanthone*, derived from *Ailanthus excelsa* is a typical example of quassinoid (Fig. 5.100). Isolation and structure of *13,18-dehydroexcelsin* (Fig. 5.101) is reported from *A. excelsa*. The bitter principle of *Polygala amara* is *polygalin* (polygamarin).
Bakaynin and margosin are bitter principles of *Meli azadirachta*. Margosin is also found in *Azadirachta indica*. *Caesalpinia bonduc* contains bitter principles including α-, β- & γ- *caesalpin*. Kutkin is a combination of active herbal constituents—picrosides I, II and IV and kutkoside—found in the herb *Picrorhiza kurroa*, which has been used in Ayurveda (Fig. 5.102). Kutkin’s antioxidant activity has been shown to decrease levels of lipid peroxidases and hydroperoxidases, free radical producing agents, and help facilitate the recovery of SOD, a powerful antioxidant in the liver needed to prevent oxidative damage. Kutkin also possesses potent antibacterial and immunomodulating properties.
**Fig. 5.102** Iridoid glycosides of *Picrorhiza kurroa*.

**Fig. 5.103** Structure of Aristolochic acid.

**Fig. 5.104** Structure of Kutkoside

**Damianin** is a brown bitter amorphous substance in *Turnera diffusa*. **Aristolochic acid**, the bitter principle of *Aristolochia indica* is reported to be nephrotoxic (Fig. 5.103). The sodium salt of aristolochic acid has been tried as an anti-inflammatory agent, but severe nephrotoxicity in humans and carcinogenicity in rodents aborted further developments.

**Aphanamixis grandifolia**, yields limonoids, including **12-hydroxyamoorastatin**, which has inhibited the growth of the murine P-388 lymphocytic leukemia cell lines (Fig. 5.104).
Fig. 5.104 Structure of 12-hydroxyamoorastatin.

*Jangomolide*, a novel limonoid and *limonin*, have been reported from *Flacourtia jangomas* (Figs. 5.105, 5.106).

Fig. 5.105 Structure of Jangomolide.

Fig. 5.106 Structure of Limonin.

Examples of cytotoxic quassinoids are bruceantin, longilactone, and 11-dehydroklaineanol. *Bruceantin* from *Brucea javanica* has attracted a
great deal of interest on account of its ability to prevent the survival of a broad spectrum of cancer cells (Fig. 5.107). **Longilactone** from *Eurycoma longifolia* is cytotoxic and prevents the survival of the *Schistosoma* species at a dose of 200mg/mL (Fig. 5.108). **11-Dehydroklaineanone** from the same plant has inhibited the growth of the *Plasmodium* species cultured in vitro with an IC50 value as low as 2 µg/mL (Fig. 5.109).
Quassia indica elaborates an interesting series of quassinoids, including samaderines, indaquassin, 2-O-glucosylsamaderine C, and simarinolide, which prevent the survival of the chloroquine-resistant K1 strain of Plasmodium falciparum, and exhibit cytotoxic properties, particularly the inhibition of endothelial cell–neutrophil leukocyte adhesion as well as anti-inflammatory activity.

Bitters also possess aromatic property due to the presence of volatile oils, e.g.: Citrus aurantium (orange peel). They are sometimes used as flavoring agents. Major bitters, studied from medicinal plants are enumerated in Table 5.4.

Table 5.4 Bitters studied from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the bitter</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Acorone</td>
<td>Acorus calamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Amarogentin</td>
<td>Swertia chirata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Amphicoside</td>
<td>Amphicome emodi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Andrographane</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Andrographolide</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Andrographone</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Bonducin</td>
<td>Caesapinia bonducella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Celastrin</td>
<td>Gunnera perpensa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Chaparrianone</td>
<td>Hannoa klaineana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Gentiopicrin</td>
<td>Swertia chirata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Homoandrographolide</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Klaineanone</td>
<td>Hannoa klaineana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Kutkosides &amp; Picrosides</td>
<td>Picrorhiza kurroa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Neoandrographolide</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Tinosporinone</td>
<td>Tinospora cordifolia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.4 Bioflavonoids

A flavonoid is identical to a bioflavonoid; furthermore, a flavonoid by definition is a polyphenol, since it contains more than one benzene ring in its structure. However, many regard polyphenols to be tannins. As seen above, green tea has an abundance of flavonoids and flavonals as well as tannin. These compounds have been well characterized in the herb and numerous papers support their use as antioxidants or free radical scavengers.
Flavonoids are an important group of polyphenols, widely distributed in plant flora. Four thousand flavonoids are known to exist and some of them are pigments in higher plants. *Quercetin*, *kaempferol* and *quercitrin* are common flavonoids present in nearly 70% of plants.

Flavonoids are derived from parent compounds known as flavans (Fig. 5.110).

![Flavan structure](image1)

**Fig. 5.110 Structure of Flavan.**

The following diagram represents the flavonoid molecule.

![Flavonoid structure](image2)

**Fig. 5.111 Structure of Flavonoid Molecule.**

Flavonoids are classified into five groups:

*A. Flavones and flavonols (Fig. 5.112)*

They are yellow and are usually found in a majority of plants. Leaves of *Calycocpteris floribunda* contain flavanol *calycocpterin*, which is considered to be anthelmentic.
**Tetrahydroamentoflavone**, from *Semecarpus anacardium*, inhibits the enzymatic activity of cyclooxygenase, with an IC50 value of 29.5 µM (COX-1). **Lanaroflavone** (Fig. 5.113), from *Campnosperma panamaense*, inhibited *Plasmodium falciparum K1* chloroquine-resistant strain and *Leishmania donovani* cultured *in vitro* with IC values of 0.2g/mL and 3.9g/mL, respectively.
5,3-dihydroxy-3,6,7,8,4'-pentamethoxyflavone (Fig. 5.114) from Polanisia dodecandra inhibits a broad panel of cancer cells: central nervous system cancer (SF-268, SF-539, SNB-75, U-251), nonsmall-cell lung cancer (HOP-62, NCI-H266, NCI-H460, NCI-H522), small-cell lung cancer (DMS-114), ovarian cancer (OVCAR-3, SKOV-3), colon cancer (HCT-116), renal cancer (UO-31), a melanoma cell line (SK-MEL-5), and leukemia cell lines (HL-60, SR), cultured in vitro.

Acacetin (5,7-dihydroxy-4'-methoxy-flavone), present in Cirisium rhinoceros inhibits the proliferation of the human liver and lung cancer cells, HepG2 and A549 cells, respectively by blocking apoptosis and cell cycle progression. (Fig. 5.115).
The rhizomes of *Iris nepalensis* is reported to characterize several isoflavones, including *irisolone* and *irisolidone* (Figs. 5.116, 5.117).

*B. Flavonols*

These are found in plants of Rutaceae.

---

*Fig. 5.115* Structure of 5,7-dihydroxy-4’methoxy-flavone.

*Fig. 5.116* Structure of Irisolone.

*Fig. 5.117* Structure of Irisolidone.

*Fig. 5.118* Structure of Flavonol (Naringin).
C. Anthocyanidins

Anthocyanidins are derived from flavonols. In nature, they are found as glycosides and are called anthocyanins. They have characteristic colors ranging from red to blue and are responsible for the color of fruits. Cyanidin and delphinidin are similar examples (Fig. 5.119).

\[
\text{Cyanidin} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{HO} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\text{Delphinidin} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{HO} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\]

Fig. 5.119 Structure of Anthocyanidins.

D. Proanthocyanidins

Proanthocyanidins on hydrolysis yield anthocyanidins. Procyanidin and prodelphinidin are common examples. Prodelphinidin isolated from Rhynchosia minima has demonstrated antibiotic activity.

E. Catechin and leucoanthocyanidins (Fig. 5.120)

Catechins are also derived from flavones. Leucoanthocyanidins have an additional hydroxy group.
Flavonolignans

*Silymarin* is a flavonol-lignan mixture obtained from seeds of *Silybum marianum* (Fig. 5.121). Silymarin is a mixture of silybin, isosilybin, silychristin and silydianin. Silybin A and B are collectively known as silibinin. Silymarin is a reputed hepatoprotective drug.

Flavonolignans (*hydnocarpin, hydnocarpin, and neohydnocarpin*) have been isolated from the seeds of *Hydnocarpus wightiana*. They are reported to be hypolipidemic, anti-inflammatory and antineoplastic (Figs. 5.122,5.123).
More about bioflavonoids

*Catechin* reported from *Artocarpus integra* has gastro protective activity. *Cyanidanol*, a stereoisomer of catechin from the seed coat of *Anacardium occidentale* has an inhibiting action on histidine decarboxylase. Flavones, *oroxylin-a, baicalein and chrysin* have been isolated from *Oroxylum indicum*. *Acacia auriculaeformis* is reported to contain flavone glycoside, *auriculoside* which is a CNS depressant.

*Ononis spinosa* contains flavonoids including *formononetin* (Fig. 5.124), and *biochanin A* (Fig. 5.125). Flavonoids, *orientin* (Fig. 5.126), and *vicenin*, isolated from the leaves of *Ocimum sanctum* have significant antioxidant activity. They increase the survival time in lethally irradiated mice.
**Phytochemicals**

**Fig. 5.125** Structure of Biochanin.

**Fig. 5.126** Structure of Orientin.

**Fig. 5.127** Structure of Isoliquiritigenin.

**Fig. 5.128** Structure of Chrysoeriol.

**Fig. 5.129** Structure of Tricin.

*Isoliquiritigenin*, a flavonoid, present in licorice inhibits the proliferation of the human liver and lung cancer cells, HepG2 and A549 cells, respectively by blocking apoptosis and cell cycle progression (Fig. 5.127).

*Aspalathin* is monomeric flavonoid found in *Aspalathus linearis* (Rooibos tea). It has significant antioxidant property. *Chrysoeriol* (3-methoxylutein) is a flavonoid found in snapdragons has anti-inflammatory and antioxidant properties (Fig. 5.128). *Tricin* is a flavone present in rice bran. It has an antioxidant property (Fig. 5.129).
Certain flavonoids of Cannabis sativa (flavocannabiside and flavosativaside) are weak inhibitors of lens aldose reductase, an enzyme implicated in the pathogenesis of cataracts in people suffering from diabetes and galactosemia (Figs. 5.130, 5.131).
Flavonoids are widely distributed in the plant kingdom and have long been under investigation for antiparasitic activity without significant prospects for therapeutic value. With intensive studies on *Artemisia annua* the situation has changed dramatically. Flavonoids isolated from *A. annua* were not found active against *P. falciparum*, but demonstrated a marked and selective potentiating effect on the antiplasmodial activity of artemisinin. *Artemetin* (Fig. 5.132) and *casticin* (Fig. 5.133) act synergistically with artemisinin. Both are methoxylated flavones and are described as inhibitors of L-glutamine uptake by infected macrophages.

![Fig. 5.132 Structure of Artemetin.](image1)

![Fig. 5.133 Structure of Casticin.](image2)

From *Artemisia indica*, the flavonoids *sakuranetin* and 7-*methoxyaromadendrin* (Fig. 5.134) also show high antiprotozoal activity. The mode of action of antiprotozoal flavonoids remains unclear. The effect on the generation of reactive oxygen species has been discussed, and so has sophisticated biochemical mechanisms like the inhibition of the P-glycoprotein-like transporter or modulation of protein phosphorylation on the SPK89 protein kinase in trypanosomes. Sakuranetin is also present in *Dodonaea viscosa*.

![Sakuranetin](image3)

![7-methoxyaromadendrin](image4)

**Fig. 5.134 Structure of flavonoids of Artemisia indica.**

*Pinitol*, present in *Bougenvillia spectabilis* has potent hypoglycemic activity (Fig. 5.135).
Flavonoids of *Ginkgo biloba* (Fig. 5.136)

*G. biloba* contains flavonoids (*bilobalide* and *ginkgolide A, B, and C*). Ginkgo has shown to increase production of adenosine triphosphate, resulting in increased cerebral glucose metabolism. Ginkgolide has been cited for its treatment of severe sepsis and for its effect of PAF receptor binding. Ginkgo inhibits platelet activating factor (PAF), thereby preventing PAF-induced clot formation and promoting clot breakdowns. Similarly, ginkgo inhibits PAF-induced bronchospasm. A standardized extract of *G. biloba* containing 24% ginkgo flavonglycosides of 40 mg is prescribed as peripheral vasodilator. *Ginkgetin* (Fig. 5.137) is reported to have anti-inflammatory, analgesic, anticancer and antiviral activities.
Eriodictyon californicum contains eriodictyonin, eriodictyol, chrysoeriodictyol, and xanthoeriodictyol. Taxus baccata contains sciadopytisin. Linarin, pectolinarin, and linarin are present in Linaria vulgaris. Cirsiliol and cirsimaritin are present in Teucrium scorodonia. Baptisia tinctoria contains isoflavonoids: formononetin baptigenin, pseudobaptigenin, (-)-maackiaim, and their glycosides baptisin, pseudobaptisin and trifolirhizin. Eupatorium perfoliatum contains flavonoids including eupatorin, astragalin, rutin, and hyperoside.

Thymus vulgaris contains flavonoids including luteolin, apigenin, naringenin, eriodictyol, cirsilineol, salvigenin, cirsimaritin, thymonine, and thymusine, partially present as glycosides. Thuja occidentalis contains including among others, quercitrin, mearusitrin, the biflavonoids hinoki flavone, and amentoflavone. Vaccinium myrtillus contains flavonoids including avicularin, hyperoside, isoquercitrin, quercitrin, meratine, and astragaline.
Table 5.5 Flavonoids studied from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the flavonoid</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Azharone</td>
<td>Azadirachta indica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Echidonin</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Farreol</td>
<td>Hildegardia barteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Hildegardiol</td>
<td>Hildegardia barteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Hydroxymackiaian</td>
<td>Hildegardia barteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Irosolidine</td>
<td>Iris versicolor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Isochamaejasmin</td>
<td>Stellera chamaejasme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Karanjin</td>
<td>Pongamia glabra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Panicolin</td>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Planifolin</td>
<td>Paepalanthus planifolius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Pterosupin</td>
<td>Pterocarpus marsupium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Rutin</td>
<td>Ruta graveolans</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.4.5 Furanocoumarins

These are photosensitizing agents used in the treatment of pigment disorders. Ayurveda, the ancient science of India, has described the use of *Psoralia corylifolia* for the treatment of leucoderma. *Psoralens* isolated from the medicinal herb, are reputed drugs in the field of dermatology. Furanocoumarins are present in *Ficus carica*, *Apium graveolens*, *Ruta graveolens* and *Angelica gluca*. *Marmelosin* present in *Aegle marmelos* is the precursor compound for psoralen biosynthesis. *Xanthotaxol* from *Angelica archangelica* exhibited potent peripheral anti-OH-tryptamine activity in rat isolated fundal strip, also antihistaminic and antinicotinic activities on guinea-pig ileum.
Fig. 5.138 Structure of common Furanocoumarins.
Fig. 5.139 Structure of more Furanocoumarins.

Table 5.6 Furanocoumarins of Genus *Heracleum*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Coumarin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>H. candicans</em></td>
<td>Heraclenin, heraclenol, bergapten, candicanin, candidopimaric acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. canescens</em></td>
<td>Xanthotoxin, imperatorin, heraclenin, bergapten, isopimpinellin, osthol and heraclenol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. cachemicrum</em></td>
<td>Xanthotoxin, imperatorin, heraclenin, bergapten, and heraclenol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. obtusifolium</em></td>
<td>Isoimperatorin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. nepalense</em></td>
<td>Bergapten, isobergapten, sphondin and isopimpinellin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. pinnatum</em></td>
<td>Xanthotoxin, imperatorin, heraclenin, bergapten, isopimpinellin, heraclenol and xanthotaxol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. rigens</em></td>
<td>Heraclenin, isopimpinellin, osthol, imperatorin, bergapten and isobergapten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. sublineare</em></td>
<td>Bergapten, isobergapten, sperdonin and isopimpinellin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. thomsoni</em></td>
<td>Psoralen, 5-hydroxyangelicin, heratomol, angelicin, lanatin, osthol, isobergapten, isopimpinellin, bergapten, sphondin and apterin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H. wallichii</em></td>
<td>Bergapten, isobergapten, sphondin, isopimpinellin, columbianetin, mrmesin nd vaginidiol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: RRL, Jammu.
Table 5.7 Furanocoumarins studied from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the furanocoumarins</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Angelicine</td>
<td><em>Angelica archangelica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Bergaptan</td>
<td><em>Psoralia corylifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Heraclein &amp; Heracelone</td>
<td><em>Heracleum caudicans, Opopanax chironium, Ruta montana,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Imperatorin</td>
<td><em>Psoralia corylifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Isopimpinellin</td>
<td><em>Psoralia corylifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Oxypeucedanin</td>
<td><em>Ficus pumila</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Psoralen</td>
<td><em>Psoralia corylifolia</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.6 Glycosides

These are water-soluble constituents, found in the cell sap. They are colorless, crystalline substances containing carbon, hydrogen and oxygen (Fig. 5.140). Some glycosides are peculiar in having nitrogen and sulfur. Glycosides are neutral in reaction. Chemically, glycosides contain a carbohydrate (glucose) and a non-carbohydrate part (aglycone or genin). Alcohol, glycerol or phenol represents aglycones. A glycoside can be readily hydrolyzed into its components with ferments or mineral acids.

\[
\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \quad \text{O} \quad \text{CH} \quad \text{CN} \\
\text{OC}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4\text{O-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_5
\]

Fig. 5.140 Structure of glycoside.

Glycosides differ in their solubility in water. Some are soluble in ether and alcohol. *Amygdalin* found in almonds is a similar example to that of a glycoside (Fig. 5.141). *Benzeldehyde* is the decomposition product of amygdalin, responsible for the odor and taste of almonds. Glycosides are optically active and are levorotatory. *Adenanthera pavonina* contains HCN-glucoside known as lignoceric acid.

\[
\text{CH} \quad \text{CN} \\
\text{OC}_6\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4\text{O-C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_5
\]

Fig. 5.141 Structure of Amygdalin.
**Classification (Fig. 5.142)**

Glycosides are classified on the basis of:

A. Type of sugar.
B. According to chemical nature of aglycone.
C. According to pharmacological action.

**5.4.6.1 Cardiac glycosides**

The group includes several medicinal herbs like *Digitalis purpurea, Thevetia nerifolia* and *Helleborus niger*. The active constituents of the plants are powerful glycosides and due to a specific action on the heart, they are known as cardiac glycosides or heart tonic.

Cardiac glycosides are divided in two groups:

A. Bufadienolides (Fig. 5.143): They are C 24 steroids. Hellbrien is a bufadienolide cardiac glycoside. On hydrolysis, it yields aglycone, hellbrigenin, which is more active than hellebrin.

**Fig. 5.143 Structure of bufadienolide.**
B. Cardenolides (Fig. 5.144): They have C 17 position unsaturated lactone. They are cyclopentanophenanthrene derivatives and have a hormonal nature. They act on the kidneys and heart. Digitalis glycosides belong to this group.

![Structure of cardenolides](Fig. 5.144 Structure of cardenolides.)

Digitalis glycosides deserve special mention. The glycosides are obtained from the leaves of *Digitalis purpurea*, when the medicinal plant is in the flowering stage. Then isolation of the glycosides in pure form is difficult and they are present in association with saponins. Stoll and Kries (1933) proved that the glycosides are of two types:

1. They are known as *glycosides-A* and *digitoxin* (Fig. 5.145) is the main glycoside. The aglycone for this group is digitoxigenin.

![Structure of Digitoxin](Fig. 5.145 Structure of Digitoxin.)
2. The second type is known as glycoside-B and gitoxin is the main glycoside. The aglycone for this group is gitaligenin.

The glycosides obtained from Digitalis lanata are of three types:

1. Digilanid-A
2. Digilanid-B
3. Digilanid-C.

Some species of Digitalis are known to contain pregnane glycosides like digipupurin, diginin and digitalonin. Three glycosides, digitoxin, gitoxin and gitalin have been isolated in pure form for pharmacological application. Digoxin is utilized clinically as a heart tonic (Fig. 5.146).

Cardiac glycoside of Asclepias currassavica
Asclepine

Glycosides of Terminalia arjuna

Arjunetin (Fig. 5.147) and fridelin (Fig. 5.148), new triterpene glycoside, arjunetoside and terminoside A, new cardenolide 16,17-dihydroridienone 3-O-beta-D-glucopyranosyl-(1->6)-O-beta-D-galactopyranoside, a novel naphthanol glycoside, arjunaphthanoloside.
Cardiac glycosides of *Nerium odorum*

*Neriodin, neriodorin, neriodorein and oleandrin* (Fig. 5.149).
Cardiac glycosides of *Thevetia nerifolia*

The cardioactive glycosides are triosides or monosides. Chief cardiac glycosides include *thevetin A & B or cerebroside* (triosides), *cerebin* and *neriifolin* (monosides), *thevenerin* (ruvoside) and *perusitin* (peruvosidic acid).

*Cardiac glycosides of Stropanthus kombe* (Fig. 5.150)

**K-stropanthin, cymarin and cymarol**

![Diagram of cardiac glycosides of Stropanthus kombe](image-url)

*Fig. 5.150 Structure of cardiac glycosides of Stropanthus kombe.*
Cardiac glycosides of Stropanthus gratus

Oubain and K-stropanthin

Cardiac glycosides of Stropanthus sarmentosus

Sermentogenin (Fig. 5.151)

\[ \text{Fig. 5.151 Structure of Sermentogenin.} \]

Cardiac glycosides of Urginea maritima

It contains crystalline glycosides: scillaren A (Fig. 5.152) and amorphous mixture of glycosides: scillaren B. Scillarenin is reported to be antiviral.

\[ \text{Fig. 5.152 Structure of scillaren A.} \]

Cardiac glycosides of red variety of Urginea indica

Scilliroside and scillirubroside

Cardiac glycosides of Convallaria majalis (Fig. 5.153)

In the homeopathic system of medicine, C. majalis is a reputed remedy for various heart diseases. It also contains cardioactive steroid glycosides, which vary in the herb according to the geographical source, and the main active constituents are convalloside, convallatoxin and convallatoxol. In clinical studies, they have shown positive inotropic effect on the myocardium and lower the elevated left ventricular pressure as well pathologically raised venous pressure.
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

Fig. 5.153 Structure of Cardiac glycosides of Convallaria majalis.

**Convalloside**

**Convallatoxin**

**Cardioactive glycosides of Adonis versalis**

*Adonidin or adonitoxin (Fig. 5.154), k-strophanthoside, k-strophanthoside β- and cymarin*

Fig. 5.154 Structure of Adonidin.
Cardioactive glycosides of *Xysmalobium undulatum*

*Xysmalobium undulatum* contains cardioactive steroid glycosides (cardenolides, mixture referred to as uzarone or xysmalobin): including among others *uzarin* (5.5%), *xysmalorin* (1.5%), *allo-uzarine*, *allo-xysmalobin*, *urezin*, *azaroside*, *ascleposide*, and *glucoascleposide*.

Cardioactive glycosides of *Cheiranthus cheiri*

*Cheiranthus cheiri* contains cardioactive steroid glycosides including *cheirotoxin*, *erysimoside*, *glucoerysimoside* and *cheiroside A*.

Cardioactive glycosides of *Euonymus alata*

Evonoside, evobioside, evomonoside, evolonoside, *glucoevonoloside*, and *glucoevonogenin* are present in seeds. *Euatroside* and *euatromonoside* are present in roots.

5.4.6.2 Anthracene glycosides

Anthracene glycosides are also known as anthracenosides. They are purgative in nature. On hydrolysis, they produce glycones like dianthrone, anthraquinone or anthrone. The sugars are arabinose, rhamnose or glucose. Anthraquinones (Fig. 5.155) are the active constituents and are responsible for the biological activity of the anthracene glycoside containing drugs. In addition to use in treating constipation, they are used for the treatment of skin disease like psoriasis and ringworm (Fig. 5.156).

![Fig. 5.155](image-url) Structure of Anthraquinone.
Emodin, iso-emodin, aloe- emodin, and chrysophanol obtained from extracts of *Cascara sargada*, when administered separately, has little purgative effect. Yet the three given in admixture produces a good purgative action.
**Aloe-emodin** inhibits cell proliferation and induces apoptosis in two human liver cancer cell lines, Hep G2 and Hep 3B (Fig. 5.157).

![Structure of Aloe-emodin](image)

**Fig. 5.157** Structure of Aloe-emodin.

**Rhein**, anthraquinone present in rhubarb, inhibited Hep G2 cell growth by inducing apoptosis and blocking cell cycle progression in G1 phase (Fig. 5.158).

![Structure of Rhein](image)

**Fig. 5.158** Structure of Rhein.

**Aloin** from *Aloe vera* is a mixture of barbaloin, β-barbaloin and iso-barbaloin. Barbaloin is present in all varieties of aloe and is a crystalline, water soluble glycoside. β-barbaloin is amorphous and iso-barbaloin is crystalline isomeric glycoside.

Anthraquinones including cordifoliol, cordifodiol and rubidian have been isolated from alcoholic extract of *Rubia cordifolia*. Rubidian has significant antioxidant activity. **Morindin** is anthraquinone glycoside present in *Morinda pubescens*. **Peroxiscomicine**, anthracenone from *Karwinskia humboldtiana* is cytotoxic to mamilllian tumors.

**Damnacanthal** obtained from *Damnacanthus indicus* and *Morinda citrifolia* is a potent and selective inhibitor of P56 tyrosine kinase activity (Fig. 5.159). It is also known to have antimalarial property.
5.4.6.3 Chalcone glycosides

Chalcone (Fig. 5.160) is derived from a combination of one molecule of cinnamic acid and three molecules of acetate or malonate. Liquiritin (Fig. 5.161) and isoliquiritin (Fig. 5.162) are common examples. The core structure of the chalcones, chalcone, exhibits a significant chemopreventive action against two human breast cancer lines, MCF-7 and MDA-MB-231.
5.4.6.4 Saponin glycosides
These have been discussed under saponins.

5.4.6.5 Apocartnoid glycosides
These are responsible for the color of the fruits and vegetables. They are found in Crocus sativus (saffron) in the form of crocin (Fig. 5.163).
5.4.6.6 Bitter glycosides
These have been discussed under bitters.

Table 5.8 Glycosides studied from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the glycosides</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Acubin</td>
<td>Plantago ovata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Aloin</td>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Amarogentin</td>
<td>Swertia chirayita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Amaroswerin</td>
<td>Swertia chirayita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Androsin</td>
<td>Picrorhiza kurroa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Apocynin</td>
<td>Picrorhiza kurroa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Arjunetin</td>
<td>Terminalia arjuna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Barringtonin</td>
<td>Barringtonia acutangula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Calotropin</td>
<td>Calotropis procera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Camellianoside</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Chiratin</td>
<td>Swertia chirayita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Chrysophanol</td>
<td>Rheum emodi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Cichorin</td>
<td>Cichorium intybus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Denicunine</td>
<td>Hemidesmus indicus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Ecliptasaponin</td>
<td>Eclipta alba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Emodin</td>
<td>Rheum emodi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Gentiopicoside or gentiopicrin</td>
<td>Acrocomia mexicana, Anemarrhena asphodeloides, Anthocleista voglii, Centaurea erythroa, Frasera carolinensis, Gentiana waltonii, Hintonia latifolia, Morinda lucida, Salvia lavandulifolia, Zygophyllum gaelatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Glabrachalcone</td>
<td>Pongamia glabra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Globularidin</td>
<td>Globularia trichosantha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Gymnemic acid</td>
<td>Gymnema sylvestre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Liriodendrin</td>
<td>Globularia trichosantha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Loganin</td>
<td>Strychnos nux vomica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Pashnone</td>
<td>Didymocarpus pedicellata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Physicon</td>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.8 contd...
Table 5.8 contd...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the glycosides</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Rubidianin</td>
<td>Rubia cordifolia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Scillaren-A</td>
<td>Urginea indica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Sennosides</td>
<td>Cassia angustifolia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Sewrtiamatrine</td>
<td>Gentiana lutea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Sweroside</td>
<td>Anthocleista djalonensis Gentiana lutea, Scabiosa columbiana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Swertianolin</td>
<td>Swertia davidi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Thevetin</td>
<td>Thevetia nerifolia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.6.7 More about glycosides

*Spinonin* a novel glycoside has been isolated from *Ononis spinosa* subsp, *leiosperma*. *Jambulin* is glucoside of *Syzygium cumini*. *Rhus cotinus* contains *fustin*, which on hydrolysis yields *fisetin* (Fig. 5.164), a flavanol closely related to *morin* (Fig. 5.165), coloring matter found in *Chlorophora tinctoria*. *Phaselous lunatus* (Java bean) contains *phaseolunatin* (Fig. 5.166).

![Fig. 5.164 Structure of Fisetin.](image)

![Fig. 5.165 Structure of Morin.](image)

![Fig. 5.166 Structure of Phaseolunatin.](image)
Bitter iridoid glycoside, *angustorine* is present in *Galipea officinalis*. Iridoid glycosides including *lamilbide, caryoptoside, alboside A and B* are present in *Lamium album*. *Boldogluclin* is a glycoside present in *Boldo fragrans* contains a glucoside known as *gluconastrutin*. *Punarnavoside* present in *Boerrhavia diffusa* has antifibrilolytic activity. Bark of *Ficus benghalensis* contains hypoglycemic glucoside, *bengalenoside*. *Barosma betulina* contains a yellow, crystalline rhamno-glycoside, *diosmin*. This is also found in *Conium maculatum*. *Prulaurisin* is obtained from *Prunus laurocerasus*. *Adansonin* is obtained from *Adansonia digitata*. *Loganin* (4–5%) is a glycoside present in *Strychnos nux vomica* (Fig. 5.167). It is identical to *meliatoside* isolated from *Menyanthes trifoliata*.

![Fig. 5.167 Structure of Loganin.](image1)

*Corrnus officinalis* is reported to contain iridoid glycosides including loganin, cornuside, sweroside, and morronoside. An unspecified glycoside, from *Caulophyllum thalictroides*, which has been localized from the drug and then injected into the ears of rabbits, causes a strong local irritation. Applying a solution into the rabbit’s eyes, leads to inflammation. Glycoside is supposed to have an oxytoxic effect.

Bark of *Saraca ashoka* is reported to contain powerful oxytotic, a *phenolic glycoside P₂*. *Barringtonin* is a colorless glucoside, present in *Barringtonia acutangula*. *Rhaponticin* (Fig. 5.168), a crystalline glycoside present in *Rheum rhabonticum* has been reported to have estrogenic activity. *Ziziphin*, a triterpene glycoside, present in *Ziziphus jujube* exhibits taste modifying property. *Hodulcine* (hoduloside), dammarene type glycoside is present in leaves of *Hovenia dulcis* (Japanese resin tree).

![Fig. 5.168 Structure of Rhaponticin.](image2)
Gymnemic acid (Fig. 5.169) from Gymnema sylvestre is a mixture of at least nine closely related acidic glycosides. Ethyl acetate extract of gymnemic acid mixture has a paralyzing effect on taste glands. The plant also contains tritepene glycosides gymnestrogenin (Fig. 5.170) and gymnemagenin (Fig. 5.171).
Smilax ornata contains a crystalline glucoside, sarsasaponin, yielding by hydrolysis, sarsasapogenin (Fig. 5.172) and dextrose. Hemidesmus indicus contains pregnane oligoglycosides medidesmine, hemisine, desmisine, denicunine and heminine.

![Fig. 5.172 Structure of Sarsasapogenin.](image)

Vitex negundo is reported to contain glycosides, including agnuside, mussaenoside, negundoside (Fig. 5.173) and nishindoside.

![Fig. 5.173 Structure of Negundoside.](image)

Calotropis procera is reported to contain glucosides (calotropin, calotoxin and uscherin). Calotropin (Fig. 5.174) has shown an antitumor effect in vitro on human epidermoid carcinoma cells of the rhinopharynx.
**Marsdenia cundurango** contains pregnane glycosides A, A<sub>α</sub>, A<sub>α′</sub>, B, C, C<sub>α</sub>, E<sub>α</sub>, and E<sub>α′</sub>. The mixture is known as **conduragin**. It has potent anticancer property. Iridoid glucosides (harpagide, harpagoside and procumbine) from *Harpagophytum procumbens* (Fig. 5.176), native to Australia, have anti-inflammatory and antirheumatic activity and are used in treatment of rheumatoid arthritis.
Arbortristoside A & C obtained from alcoholic extract of Nyctanthes arbortristis demonstrated a significant anti-allergic effect comparable to disodium cromoglycate when tested in the experimental models of cutaneous anaphylaxis and mast cell degranulation in rats. Swertisoside from Enicostemma littorale has hypotensive activity. Eclipta alba is reported to contain triterpenoid glucosides (ecliptasaponin C, ecliptasaponin D and eclabatin).

Rubia cordifolia contains glycosides including lucidin, primeveroside, and ruberithric acid. Glucosides, coreopsin, isocoreopsin, sulphurein, monospermoside, and isomonospermoside have been reported from Butea monosperma. Sedum sarmentosum contains a cyanogenetic glycoside, sarmentosin which is reported to lower SGPT levels in chronic viral hepatitis.

Glucosides-sitoidoside VII and VIII present in Withania somnifera exhibited marked anti-stress and anti-anxiety activity. Sitoindosides, when tested against subacute models of inflammation like granuloma formation and formalin-induced arthritis in rats, exhibited a significant anti-inflammatory activity, comparable to a 5mg/kg dose of hydrocortisone sodium succinate. Solidago virgaurea contains phenolic glycoside leiocarposide, which is considered to be a diuretic and analgesic.
Oleuropein (Fig. 5.177), secoiridoid glycoside is present in, *Fraxinus excelsior*, *Olea europaea* and *Ligustrum obtusifoliu*. This compound has hypotensive, antioxidant, antiviral and antimicrobial properties. There is no known toxicity or contraindications for oleuropein.

![Fig. 5.177 Structure of Oleuropein.](image)

*Allamanda cathartica* contains iridoid glucosides including *allamandin, allamandicin* and *allamdin*. Allamandin (Fig. 5.178) is antileukemic.

![Fig. 5.178 Structure of Allamandin.](image)

*Tetrahydroswiertianolin* (Fig. 5.179) from *Swertia japonica*, protects rodents against hepatic apoptosis induced by intraperitoneal injection of D-galactosamine (700mg/kg) and lipopolysaccharide (10mg/kg) via blockade of tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α production at the transcriptional level.

![Fig. 5.179 Structure of Tetrahydroswiertianolin.](image)
Ranunculosides (ranunculins)
They are volatile lactones, chemically similar to coumarins. However, they are less stable as compared to coumarins as they are not phenolic substances. On hydrolysis, they produce ranunculine and glucose. Ranunculin is then converted into unsaturated lactone: protoanemonine (very unstable compound). Upon drying, protoanemonine gets converted into anemonine, which further converts into anemonic acid by itself. Ranunculin and protoanemonine have medicinal value (Fig. 5.180).


**Glycosides of Stevia rebaudiana**

*S. rebaudiana* contains eight diterpene glycosides which are sweet principles. They are *stevioside* (Fig. 5.181), *rebaudioside A to E, dulcoside A, and steviolbioside*. Stevioside and rebaudioside A, in pure state, are 300 and 450 times sweeter than sugar. Animal studies have demonstrated the hypoglycemic and hypotensive activities of stevioside.

![Structure of Stevioside](image)

**Pedicin** from the *Fissitigma lanuginosum* inhibits tubulin assembly into microtubules with IC50 value of 300µ M. Other chalcones, *fissistin*, and *isofissistin* are cytotoxic against KB cells.

**Genipin**

It is an aglycone from iridoid glucoside, geniposide (Fig. 5.182). It is an excellent natural cross-linker. It blocks activity of an uncoupling protein 2 (UCP2), which prevents insulin from being produced. LD₅₀ i.v. 382 mg/kg in mice.
Arbutin (Fig. 5.183)

It is a bitter neutral crystalline glucoside present in *Arctostaphylos Uva Ursi*. In addition to *arbutin*, *methylarbutin*, and *hydroquinone* are also present. The leaves typically contain 5–15% *arbutin* and up to 4% *methylarbutin*. Arbutin is metabolized by intestinal bacteria to aglycone hydroquinone, which is absorbed, conjugated to glucuronides and sulfate esters in the liver and excreted renally. Arbutin is rapidly absorbed after oral administration; renal excretion is also rapid, and 75% is excreted within the first 24 h.

Arbutin has demonstrated *in vitro* bacteriostatic activity against *Bacillus subtilis*, *E. coli*, *Enterobacter*, *Helicobacter pylori*, *Klebsiella*, *Shigella sonnei*, and *Shigella flexneri*. Arbutin also repressed the expression of a key virulence factor for *Listeria monocytogenes*. Arbutin and its metabolites inhibited the growth of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Ureaplasma urealyticum* and *Mycoplasma hominis* *in vitro*.

Arbutin has been used to inhibit melanogenesis in treating hyperpigmented skin lesions such as chloasma. Hydroquinone is the active ingredient in a number of non-prescription and prescription strength products used to decrease hyperpigmentation.

Aescin (Fig. 5.184)

The principal extract and medicinal constituent of *Aesculus hippocastanum* (horse chestnut) seed is *aescin*, a mixture of triterpenoid saponin glycosides. It can be fractionated into beta-aescin, an easily crystallizable mixture, and alpha-aescin, which is water-soluble.
Aescin decreases the transcapillary filtration of water and proteins. It has been used to treat a wide variety of inflammatory and edematous conditions, to reduce swelling associated with bruises, fractures, brain trauma, post-operative and post-traumatic soft tissue swelling, and acute thrombophlebitis. Aescin reduces lysosomal enzyme activity by stabilizing lysosomal membranes and limiting enzyme release. Aescin also improves venous tone by enhancing the constricting effect of noradrenaline. Arterial vessels are not constricted and diastolic blood pressure is not affected.

Aescin stimulated the release of prostaglandins (PGF2-α) in the perfused isolated rat lung, and induced prostaglandin-mediated contractions in the isolated portal vein of rats and rabbits.

The use of horse chestnut seed in the treatment of chronic venous insufficiency has also been supported by placebo-controlled studies. A case series involving more than 5,000 patients with chronic venous insufficiency treated with standardized horse chestnut extract reported decreased subjective complaints. Another case series of 1183 patients with chronic venous insufficiency receiving an aescin preparation over 5 mon demonstrated a clear reduction in objective and subjective symptoms with few side effects.

### 5.4.7 Napthoquinones

These are phenolic compounds distributed in Rubiaceae and Verbenaceae. *Plumbagin* (5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1, 4-napthoquinone) from *Plumbago zeylanica* is a typical example of napthoquinone (Fig. 5.185). *Shikonin* obtained from *Lithospermum carasscens* has hepatoprotective activity. Napthoquinones from Boraginaceae has shown hormone like activity.
**Juglone** obtained from *Juglans nigra* has sedative activity (Fig. 5.186). Naphthoquinones from Boraginaceae has shown hormone like activity. **Lapachol** is a typical example of naphthoquinone (Fig. 5.187).

![Structure of Plumbagin](image1.png)  ![Structure of Juglone](image2.png)  ![Structure of Lapachol](image3.png)

**5.4.8 Neutral principles**

Neutral principles are bodies of unidentified character. They are widely distributed in Asteraceae. Some neutral principles have been studied for structural determination and biological activity. **Kalmeghin** from *Andrographis paniculata* and **picrotoxin** (Fig. 5.188) from *Anamartia paniculata* are common examples. **Charantin** is a non-nitrogenous, neutral pure substance from *Momordica charnatia*. It has hypoglycemic, mild cholinergic blocking and non-specific antispasmodic activities. There is however a controversy as regards to the neutral principle status of charantin. According to modern literature, it is classified as steroid saponin. Charantin resolves into two compounds of well defined melting point.
5.4.9 Phenolics

In the phenols group, cresols and the parent compound itself are the most important compounds as well as thymol. Natural compounds such as pyrocatechol, guaiacol and their derivatives are not toxic. A well-known pyrocatechol derivative is adrenaline. Monohydric phenols provide numerous natural scents (e.g. vanillin, thymol, carvacrol, zingiberone (in ginger), and salicylaldehyde).

Phenolic compounds are widely distributed in plant flora. They constitute an important part of glycosides (phenolic glycosides), flavonoids, and tannins. Curcumins (Fig. 5.189) are phenolics compounds from Curcuma longa. They have antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti cancer, and hepatoprotective activities. The pharmacological activities of curcuminoids are due to unique molecular structure. In crude extracts of C. longa about 70–76% of curcumin is present alongwith 16% demethoxycurcumin and 8% bisdemethoxycurcumin. Tetracurcuminoids (Fig. 5.189) are derived from curcuminoids. This compound is, unlike the yellow curcuminoids.
**Semimyrtucommulone** from *Myrtus communis* has antioxidant activity. **Kneracheline A and B**, from *Knema furfuracea* which inhibits the proliferation of bacteria cultured *in vitro*. **3-undecylphenol and 3-(8Z-trideceny1)-phenol** from *Knema hookeriana*, inhibits the proliferation of *Bursaphelechus xylophilus* cultured *in vitro* with a maximum effective dose of 4.5mg/cotton ball and 20mg/cotton ball, respectively.

**Meusone**, a phenolic compound is found in *Mesua ferrea*. **Habenariol** from *Habenaria repens* has antioxidant activity. **Bhilawanol and semecaprol** are reported from *Semecarpus anacardium*. Oil of *Pongamia glabra* contains **karanjin and pongamol**. **Bakuchiol**, a phenolic is present in *Psoralia corylifolia* (bawachi) oil (Fig. 5.191).
Flavonoids and tannins (variety of phenolics) have been discussed under respective headings.

Adhyperforin

Hyperforin

Filicic acid
A variety known as polyphenols is found in fruits of some plants. They occur as natural color pigments and are responsible for the color of fruits. Phenols are classified in two groups:

A. Phenolic acids.
B. Flavonones, flavones, xanthones and catechins.
Caffeic acid (Fig. 5.193) is regarded as the most common of phenolic compounds distributed in plant flora. It is produced by hydroxylation of cinnamic acid. Caffeic acid is distributed in Coffea arabica, Echinacea purpurea and Cichorium intybus. Quinic acid is the degradation product of caffeic acid. Chlorogenic acid (Fig. 5.193) is a dark colored pigment and is the most abundant phenolic compound in plants next to caffeic acid. It is known to cause allergic dermatitis among humans. Other examples of caffeic acid derivatives are chicoric acid (Fig. 5.193), dicoфеayl tartaric acid and isocaffeic acid.
The administration of phenolic acids to experimental animals produces a wide range of biological manifestations. Caffeic acid is observed as an inhibitor of dopa receptor. Caffeic and oxidized rosmarinic acids inhibit the effects produced by human lutenizing hormone of chorionic origin and by an equal part of lutenizing hormone and follicle stimulating hormone from human hypophysis. An injection of ferulic acid induces the liberation of follicle stimulating hormone from the pituitary and inhibits the liberation of prolactin. **Ferulic acid** (Fig. 5.193) also antagonizes the effect of androgens on the prostate of castrated rats.

**Table 5.9** Phenolics studied from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the phenolic</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adhyperforin</td>
<td>Hypericum perforatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Curcumin</td>
<td>Curcuma longa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Filicin or filicic acid</td>
<td>Dryopteris flex-mas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Gossypiol</td>
<td>Gossypium herbaceum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Hypeforin</td>
<td>Hypericum perforatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Margaspidin</td>
<td>Dryopteris flex-mas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Semimyrtucommulone</td>
<td>Myrtus communis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The oleoresin obtained from rhizome of ginger contains pungent phenylalkylketones or vanillyl ketones, including [6]-gingerol, [6]-paradol, shogaol, and zingerone (Fig. 5.194). They have been reported to possess a strong anti-inflammatory activity. Shogaols are artifacts formed during storage, probably created by a dehydration reaction of the gingerols. The ratio of shogaols to gingerols sometimes is taken as an indication of product quality.
Gingerol and shogaol (oral; 70–140 mg/kg), are shown to cause vagal stimulation and hence a decrease in both blood pressure and heart rate. 6-gingerol and 6-shogaol suppressed gastric contraction but increased gastrointestinal motility and spontaneous peristaltic activity in laboratory animals.

Gingerol has been found to have a similar structure to acetyl salicylic acid, and these two compounds have similar effects on prostaglandin production. Some of the beneficial medicinal qualities claimed for ginger may stem from zingerone’s effectiveness as an antioxidant. Zingerone reacts with free radicals that can cause tissue damage and inflammation.

Topical application of [6]-gingerol or [6]-paradol 30 min prior to 12-O-tetradecanoyl-phorbol-13-acetate (TPA) attenuated the skin papillomagenesis initiated by 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene in female ICR mice. Galanals A and B, isolated from the flower buds of a Japanese ginger, Zingiber mioga, are potent apoptosis inducers in Human T lymphoma Jurkat cells.

Ginkgolic acid, alkylphenol present in Ginkgo biloba, has significant anxiolytic activity (Fig. 5.195).
Anacardic acid (Fig. 5.196) from the bark of Ozoroa insignis inhibits Hep-G2 (human hepatocellular carcinoma), MDA-MB-231 (human mammary adenocarcinoma), and 5637 (human primary bladder carcinoma).

5.4.10 Resins, oleoresins and gum-resins

Resins are obtained by oxidization of volatile oils. Resins are brittle, non-volatile, solid substances. Sometimes resins are among the products of oxidization of terpenes. The chemical composition of resins is very complex and contains various compounds including acids. Resins are soluble in alkali, alcohol and insoluble in water. They are obtained from plant exudates and are produced in special ducts.

Resin is obtained from Ferula asafoetida (Figs. 5.197, 5.199). Sometimes resins are produced as a result of injury of the plant part. Turpthein, convolvulin (jalapurgin), and jalapin are common resins found in Convolvulaceae (Fig. 5.200). Jalapin is mixture of acidic glycosides. Resin present in Ipomoea hederaceae (kaladana) is known as pharbiticin.
Phytochemicals 157

Ferula asfoetida resin

15% of unstable ester of ferulic acid with asaresin

Umbellic acid

Umbelliferone

Fig. 5.197 Resin of *Ferula asfoetida.*

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{C} \\
\text{C} = C \\
\text{COOH}
\end{array}
\]

Fig. 5.198 Structure of Umbellic acid.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{HO} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O} \\
\text{O}
\end{array}
\]

Fig. 5.199 Structure of Umbelliferone.

Ipomoea purga (Jalap) resin

Soluble in ether (jalapin)

insoluble in ether (convolvulin)

Hydrolysis

rhamnoconvulvic acid (74%)
tiglic acid (9%)
exogonic acid (7%)

Fig. 5.200 Resin of *Ipomoea jalap.*

*Guaiacum officinale* contains 20–25% resin. Chief constituents are \(\alpha\)- and \(\beta\)-guaiaconic acid (Fig. 5.201), guaiaretic acid, guaiacic acid, guaiacsapnoic acid, and guaiacsaponin.
Oleoresins are natural products of resin mixed with volatile oils. Oleoresin are obtained from traditional Ayurvedic drugs, *Commiphora mukul* and *Commiphora molmol* are typical examples (Figs. 5.202, 5.203). *Myrobalanin*, oleoresin obtained from *Terminalia chebula* is soluble in alcohol, ether, petroleum spirit and oil of turpentine.

Toxicodendron (*Rhus* sp) contains *urshiols*, phenolic compounds, found in oleo-resin fraction and are derivatives of pentadecyl catechol or heptadecyl catechol (Fig. 5.204).
Gum-resins are plant exudates and are mixtures of gum and resin and often volatile oils. When gum–resins are dissolved in water, the gum becomes soluble and the resin is kept in suspension. Asafetida is a one such example. Gum resin from *Holarrhena antidysenterica* contains *lettoresinol-A and lettoresinol-B*.

Balsams are combinations of resins or oleoresins with aromatic acids like benzoic acid or cinnamic acid or both. They are viscous and obtained from the trunk of certain plants.
Fig. 5.205 Structure of significant resins, oleoresins and gum-resins.
Table 5.10 Resins, oleoresins & gum-resins from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the Resins, oleoresins &amp; gum-resins</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Boswellic acid</td>
<td>Boswellia serrata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Cannabinol</td>
<td>Cannabis indica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Capsaicin</td>
<td>Capsicum annum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Chavicin</td>
<td>Piper nigrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Embelin</td>
<td>Embelia ribes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Galangin</td>
<td>Alpinia officinarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Gingerol</td>
<td>Zingiber officinale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Guggulsterones</td>
<td>Commiphora mukul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Podophyllin</td>
<td>Podophyllum hexandrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Turpethin</td>
<td>Ipomoea turpethum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.11 Saponins

Saponins are glycosides found in a number of plants. Saponins are regarded as high molecular weight compounds in which, a sugar molecule is combined with triterpene or steroid aglycone. The saponins are classified in two groups:

A. Steroid saponins (Fig. 5.206).
B. Triterpene saponins (Fig. 5.207).
Fig. 5.206 Structure of significant steroid saponins.
Phytochemicals

Shatavarin IV

Asparagoside D

Panaxadiol (Ginseng saponin)
Triterpenoid saponins (*bacoside A, A₁, and B*) are present in *Bacopa monniera* (Fig. 5.208). Bacoside A and B are optical isomers. The bacoside-A content is about 2.5–3.0%. Other bacosides have been reported which are dammarane-type saponins known as *bacopasaponins* (Fig. 5.209).
Saponins have a characteristic feature of frothing. The term saponin is derived from *Saponaria vaccaria* (Quillaja saponaria), a plant, which abounds in saponins and was once used as soap. *Quillaja saponaria* is known to contain toxic glycosides *quillajic acid* (Fig. 5.210) and *senegen*. Quillajic acid is strenutatory and senegin is toxic. Senegin is also present in *Polygala senega*. 
Saponins are soluble in water and insoluble in ether. Saponins, like glycosides on hydrolysis, give aglycones. *Cholorophytm borivilianum* (safed musli) is reported to contain furostane saponins and spirotane saponins.

**Ruscogenins** present in *Yucca liliaceae* are used in treating pain and inflammation of arthritis and rheumatism. *Yucca filamentosa* is the other known species, which contains *Ruscogenin* as an active principle. It also contains *protoyuccoside C, yuccoside B, yuccoside E, yuccoside C*, aglycones including sarsapogenin, tigogenin. Ruscogenins are also present in *Ruscus aculeatus* and in animal tests; there was an increase in venous tone and an electrolyte-like reaction on the cell wall of the capillaries.

*Medicago sativa* contains triterpene saponins *sojasapogenols A-E*. *Anemarrhena asphodeloides* is reported to contain steroid saponins *sarsapogenin, markogenin* and *neogitonin*. A variety of experiments have been able to demonstrate anti-arthritic and cortisone-like effects for the drug with its steroid saponin content. In addition, inhibitions of platelet aggregation, of Na, K-ATP-ase and of DNA-polymerase were observed. The *timosaponin A-III* isolated from the drug reduced the serum levels of a 1-fetoprotein in animal experiments.

*Platycodon grandiflorum* is reported to contain triterpene saponins including *platycodin, platycodoside C, aglycone platycodigenin*, including *glycosides of polygalic acid, platycogenic acids A to C*. *Entanin* saponin from seeds of *Entada pursaetha* is antitumor. It inhibits Walker 256 tumors in rats without death.

Saponins are extremely poisonous, as they cause hemolysis of blood and are known to cause cattle poisoning. Some saponins are important from the therapeutic point of view, as in *Digitalis purpurea*, the presence of saponins is necessary for activity of cardiac glycosides. Recent studies have shown that saponins have hypolipidemic and anticancer activity.
**Phenoside**, a dammarane type saponin, isolated from extract of *Gynostemma pentohyllum* (gypenoside) is a novel insulin-releasing substance (Fig. 5.211). *Bupleureum falcatum*, Chinese medicine, contains oleanene saponins called *saikasaponins a, b₁, b₂, c, d, and f*. Saikasaponins a and d are more active than b₁, b₂ and c. The former pair has stronger haemolytic and anti-inflammatory properties.

![Figure 5.211 Structure of Phenoside.](image)

**Table 5.11** Saponins from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the Saponins</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Asiaticoside</td>
<td><em>Centella asiatica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Asparagosides</td>
<td><em>Asparagus officinalis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Bacoside</td>
<td><em>Bacopa monniera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Disogenin</td>
<td><em>Dioscorea floribunda</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Ecdysterone</td>
<td><em>Achyranthes aspera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Glycyrrhizin</td>
<td><em>Glycyrrhiza glabra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Tigogenin</td>
<td><em>Costus speciosus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Uttronin-A</td>
<td><em>Solanum nigrum</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.12 Tannins

These are widely distributed in plant flora. They are phenolic compounds of high molecular weight. Tannins are soluble in water and alcohol and are found in the root, bark, stem and outer layers of plant tissue. Tannins have a characteristic feature to tan, i.e. to convert things into leather. The tannins are acidic in reaction and is attributed to the presence of phenolic or carboxylic group. Tannins form complex with proteins, carbohydrates, gelatin and alkaloids.

Tannins are classified in two classes:

1. Hydrolysable tannins.
2. Condensed tannins.

Hydrolysable tannins, upon hydrolysis, produce gallic acid (Fig. 5.212) and ellagic acid (Fig. 5.213). Depending on the type of acid produced, the hydrolysable tannins are called gallotannins or egallitannins. On heating, they form pyrogallic acid.

 Aceritannin (Fig. 5.214) and hamemellitannin (Fig. 5.215), obtained from Acer sp. and Hamamelis virginiana, respectively, are examples of gallotannins.
*Amariin*, hydrolysable tannin is found in leaves and seeds of *Colutea nepalensis*. *Oenthein-B* is hydrolysable tannin is found in *Oenothera erythrosopeala*. They are also found in *Rheum emodi*, *Aegle marmelos* and *Quercus infectoria*. Ellagic acid isolated from *Terminalia arjuna* has antimutagenic activity. A dichloromethane-methanol extract of *Anisophyllea apetala* provided 3’-methyl-3,4-O,O-methylidene-4’-O-β-D-glucopyranosylellagic acid, which showed some DNA damaging effect *in vitro*, and potently inhibited the survival of yeast.

*Casuarina stricta* has been reported to contain elagittannins including *casuarinin, casuriin, stachyurin, casuarictin and strictinin*. *Casuarinin* (Fig. 5.216) isolated from *Terminalia arjuna* has been studied as antiviral against antiherpes simplex virus type 2 and anticancer activity in non-small cell lung cancer A549 cell line.
Condensed tannins are formed by condensation of catechin units. These types of tannins are also known as phalbatannins. They are powerful antioxidants and are present in *Vitis vinifera*, *Acacia catechu*, *Lawsonia inermis* and *Pinus sylvestris*. Some tannins are potential carcinogenic agents. *Acacia catechu* (black catechu) contains 10% acacetechin, which on oxidation yields, catechu tannic acid (Fig. 5.217). *Uncaria gambier* (pale catechu) is a good source of tannin. *Pterocarpus marsupium* contains glucosidal tannin, known as kinotannic acid (70–80%).

Tannins are used as antiseptic and this activity is due to the presence of the phenolic group. Tannin-rich medicinal plants are used as healing agents in a number of diseases. In Ayurveda, formulations based on tannin-rich plants have been used for the treatment of diseases like leucorrhoea, rhinorrhea and diarrhea.

*Triphala* (combination of fruits of *Terminalia chebula*, *Terminalia belerica* and *Emblica officinalis*) is an example similar to that of tannin containing formulation. *Terminalia chebula* contains 30% tannins with chebulinic acid (Fig. 5.218) and chebulagic acid (Fig. 5.219), as the principal constituents. *Terminalia belerica* contains 17% tannins. Recently, elagitannin (*peduncugalin*) was isolated from the fruits of *Emblica officinalis* (Fig. 5.220). Neochebulic acid is a minor isomer of chebulic acid. Chebulic acid is closely allied to ellagic acid and reported to be hepatoprotective, chebulinic acid is an antioxidant while chebulagic acid is immunosuppressant, respectively.
A group which contains useful detoxifying chemicals is the polyphenols, which can also include many of the tannins. There are numerous references to support the use of these materials. The best known, polyphenols probably come from green tea or *Thea viridis*, a fast growing additive in today’s skin care repertoire. Tea contains high levels of tannins or phenolic materials (approx.10–25%) which consist of catechin (flavanol) and gallic acid units and corialgin (Fig. 5.221).
Family Melastomataceae elaborate an unusual series of hydrolyzable tannin oligomers such as *nobotannin B* (Fig. 5.223), which has exhibited anti-Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) property *in vitro*. *Procyanidin B-2* (Fig. 5.224) and *castalagin* (Fig. 5.225) are ubiquitous in the family and are known to lower blood pressure in spontaneously hypertensive rats dose-dependently through decrease of sympathetic tone.
Fig. 5.223 Structure of Nobotannin B.

Fig. 5.224 Structure of procyanidin B-2.
Green tea infusion contains intact catechin polyphenols, which give rise to its bitterness and astringency. Six catechin polyphenols have been isolated from green tea; (-)-epigallocatechin, (-)-epicatechin, (-)-epigallocatechin-3-O-gallate (EGCG), gallocatechin-3-O-gallate (GCG), methyl-epigallocatechin-3-O-gallate, and (-)-epicatechin-3-O-gallate (ECG). These substances were tested for their antioxidant activity, and the gallic acid esters EGCG and EGC were found to be the strongest antioxidants, with EGCG being over 200 times more active than vitamin E in an in vitro model. In another test, EGCG was more active against fat rancidity (lipid peroxidation) than vitamin C or vitamin E, and also exhibited synergistic action with those vitamins.

Tea contains the polyphenol ECGC, or (-)-epigallocatechin gallate (Fig. 5.225), as major components and it is these in which the researchers are interested. The polyphenols are powerful antioxidants capable of scavenging H2O2 and superoxide anions and thus preventing free radical damage to the body. This is a mechanism that has been associated with cancer and other disorders.
ECGC also has an astringent effect and may inhibit cell membrane phosphorylation. The researchers do not know whether the polyphenols inhibit the initiation or the promotion of tumors. Following the oral feeding of a polyphenolic fraction, isolated from green tea, (GTP) in drinking water, an increase in the activities of antioxidant and phase II enzymes in skin, small bowel, liver, and lung of female SKH-1 hairless mice was observed. **Prodelphinidin B-2 3, O-gallate** (Fig. 5.227), a proanthocyanidin gallate has been demonstrated for anti-proliferative activity in human non-small cell lung cancer A549 cells by G0/G1 arrest and apoptosis induction.

**Prodelphinidin B-2 3,3'-di-O-gallate** (Fig. 5.228), a proanthocyanidin gallate from *Myrica rubra* has been demonstrated to arrest cell cycle at
G0/G1 phase and induce apoptosis in MCF-7 and A549 cells by p21/WAF1 and Fas/APO-1/Fas ligand pathway, respectively.

**Fig. 5.228** Structure of Prodelphinidin B-2 3,3’-di-O-gallate.

**Putranjivain A** (Fig. 5.229), isolated from whole plant of *Euphorbia jolkini*, has been demonstrated for anti-proliferative activity in human breast adenocarcinoma by blocking cells by G0/G1 arrest and apoptosis induction.

**Fig. 5.229** Structure of Putranjivain A.
Punicalagin are tannins, large polyphenol compounds found in *Punica granatum*. They are the largest molecules found intact in rat plasma after oral ingestion. They were found to show no toxic effects in rats that were given a 6 diet of punicalagin for 37 d. The compound has in vitro antiproliferative, antioxidant and apoptotic activities.

**Methyl gallate** (Fig. 5.230) from *Toona sinensis* protects DNA in canine Cocker Spaniel kidney cell line (MDCK) cells against hydrogen peroxide-induced oxidative stress.

![Fig. 5.230 Structure of methyl gallate.](image)

Ellagitannins *oenothinin A* and *oenothinin B* from *Epilobium* species has inhibitory activity on α-reductase and aromatase.

**Table 5.12 Tannins from medicinal plants.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the tannins</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Chebulic acid</td>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Chebulinic acid</td>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Chebulagic acid</td>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Corialgin</td>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Ellagic acid</td>
<td>Widely distributed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Gallic acid</td>
<td>Widely distributed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Neochebulinic acid</td>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Oenothinin-B</td>
<td><em>Oenothera erythrosepala</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Punicalagin</td>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Tannic acid</td>
<td>Widely distributed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Terchebin</td>
<td><em>Emblica officinalis, Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Terflavin-A</td>
<td><em>Terminalia cattapa T.chebula, T.macroperta</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Termigrandin</td>
<td><em>Terminalia chebula</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.13 Terpenes (see resins, oleoresins and gum-resins)

Terpenes are among the most widespread and chemically diverse groups of natural products. They are flammable unsaturated hydrocarbons, existing in liquid form. They are found in essential oils, resins or oleoresins. They are classified as mono, di, tri and sesquiterpenoids. The function of terpene is generally considered to be both ecological and physiological.

Terpenoids includes hydrocarbons of plant origin of general formula (C\(_5\)H\(_8\))\(_n\). Terpenoids of *Boswellia serrata* are shown in Fig. 5.231. Methylated cyclohexane contains a large number of terpenoids including cyclogeraniol, ionones, and irones. Ionones are reported from *Boronia megastigma* oil. Irones are present in orris root. Borneols and isoborneols occur in *Dryobalanops camphora*.

![Terpenoids of Boswellia serrata.](image-url)

Terpenes are classified by the number of 5-carbon units they contain.

5.4.13.1 Hemiterpene: C\(_5\)

A familiar example is *angelic acid*.

5.4.13.2 Monoterpene: C\(_{10}\)

These are major component of many essential oils (Fig. 5.232).

![Structure of common monoterpenes.](image-url)
Terpinen-4-ol (Fig. 5.233) is the primary antibacterial component of tea tree oil from *Melaleuca alternifolia*. Thujone has achieved notoriety as the neurotoxic agent in wormwood oil from *Artemisia absinthium* used in the preparation of the drink absinthe, now banned in most countries (Fig. 5.234).

![Terpinen-4-ol and Thujone](Fig. 5.234 Medicinally important monoterpens.)

Pulegone is a major constituent of oil of pennyroyal from *Mentha pulegium*, which has a folklore history as an abortifacient (Fig. 5.235).

![Structure of (+)-Pulegone](Fig. 5.235 Structure of (+)-Pulegone.)

5.4.13.3 Sesquiterpene: C\textsubscript{15}

Like monoterpenes, these are major components of many essential oils. The sesquiterpene acts as irritants when applied externally and when consumed internally their action resembles that of gastrointestinal tract irritant. A number of sesquiterpene lactones have been isolated and broadly they have antimicrobial (particularly antiprotozoal) and neutotoxic action.
Sesquiterpene lactone, palasonin, isolated from *Butea monosperma* has anthelmintic activity (Fig. 5.237). It inhibits glucose uptake and depletes the glycogen content in *Ascaridia galli*.

**Parthenolide** (Fig. 5.238), sesquiterpene lactone, found in *Tanacetum parthenium* has anti-inflammatory, antisecretory and spasmolytic activities (Fig. 5.165). It also inhibits the release of serotonin through various mediators and inhibits activation of MAP kinase. It has been used in the treatment of migraine.

**Arglabin** isolated from *Artemisia myriantha* has immunomodulator activity. **Inuviscolide** isolated from *Inula viscosa* has anti-inflammatory activity. **Lychnophorolide A**, sesquiterpene lactone from *Eremanthus eriopus* is reported to be analgesic. **Khusinol** and **khusol** are sesquiterpene alcohol from *Vetiveria zizanoides* oil (Fig. 5.239).
Himachalol (Fig. 5.240), a sesquiterpene alcohol obtained from hexane soluble extract of the wood of Cedrus deodara was found to have significant anti-allergic activity. The effect was comparable to disodium cromoglycate in experimental models. Jatamansone (valeranone) and nardostachone are the principal sesquiterpenes of Nardostachys jatamansi (Figs. 5.241, 5.242). Jatamansone has antihypertensive, sedative and tranquilizing activities.

5.4.13.4 Diterpene: C_{20}
These are classically considered to be resins. Taxol, the anticancer agent, is familiar example (Fig. 5.242).
Taxol is found predominantly in the bark of *T. brevifolia*, but in relatively small amounts (about 0.01–0.02%). Up to 0.033% of taxol has been recorded in some samples of leaves and twigs, but generally the taxol content is much lower than in the bark. The content of some other taxane derivatives in the bark is considerably higher, e.g. up to 0.2% *baccatin III*. Other taxane derivatives characterized include 10-deacetyltaxol, 10-deacetylbaccatin III, cephalomannine and 10-deacetylcephalomannine.

Paclitaxel (taxol) is being used clinically in the treatment of ovarian and breast cancers, non-small-cell lung cancer, small-cell lung cancer, and cancers of the head and neck. Taxol has also been shown to bind to a second target, a protein which normally blocks the process of apoptosis (cell death). Inhibition of this protein allows apoptosis to proceed.

*Pondicin* and *oridonin* isolated from *Rabdosia rubescens* are anticancer. *Dehydrocrotonin* isolated from *Croton cajucara* is antileukemic and anti-ulcerogenic. *Scopadulin*, tetracyclic diterpene from *Scopolia parviflora* has antiviral activity. *Ballota nigra* contains diterpenes including *marrubiin*, 7-acetoxymarrubiin, *ballotinon*, *ballotenol* and *ballonigrin*.

*Salvinorin A*, diterpene found in *Salvia divinorum* is reported to be useful against alcoholic addiction (Fig. 5.243).

![Fig. 5.243 Structure of Salvinorin A.](image)

*Forskolin* is a labdane diterpene found in *Coleus forskolii*. It is used to raise the levels of cyclic AMP (Fig. 5.244). It resensitizes cell receptors by activating the enzyme adenyl cyclase and increasing intracellular levels of cAMP, which is an important signal carrier that is necessary for proper biological response of cells to hormones and other extracellular signals.
5.4.13.5 Triterpene: $C_{30}$

This group includes common triterpenes, steroids, sterols, and cardiac glycosides.

Common triterpenes: *Amyrins, ursolic acid and oleanic acid* (Fig. 5.245).

![Fig. 5.245 Structure of common triterpenes.](image)

*Healianol*, triterpene alcohol from *Calendula officinalis* has anti-inflammatory activity. Triterpenoids *lupeol* and *varunol* have been isolated from the root and stem bark of *Crataeva nurvala*. A triterpenoid,
3 $\alpha$-hydroxy-D-friedoolean-1-ene has been reported from *Adhatoda vasica*. Galphimine-B from *Galpinia glauca* has sedative activity. *Abrisapogenol E* and *abrisapogenaldacetal* from *Rabinia pseudoacacia* are cytotoxic. Triterpenoids from *Pourouma guainensis* are antileshmanial. *Azadirachtin* (Fig. 5.246) isolated from *Azadirachta indica* is potent insecticidal. *Nimbin, nimbinin* and *nimbidin* are other triterpenes derived from neem.

Saponins: See Section 2.3.10.

Sterols: *β*-sitosterol, stigmasterol, taraxasterol and campesterol (Fig. 5.247).
Phytosterols compete with dietary cholesterol for uptake in the intestines. They have demonstrated the ability to block the uptake of cholesterol and facilitate its excretion from the body. Contradicting this, some studies have reported inefficiency of morning sterols in competing with dietary cholesterol.

**Phytostans (stanols)**
These are saturated phytosterols. They are widely distributed in plants. They have cholesterol lowering activity.
### Table 5.13 Terpenes from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the terpene</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>2-α-hydroxymicromeric acid</td>
<td>Terminalia chebula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Absinthin</td>
<td>Artemisia absinthum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Ajoene</td>
<td>Allium sativum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Allicin</td>
<td>Allium sativum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Amberttolide</td>
<td>Hibiscus abelmoschus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Angelic acid</td>
<td>Angelica glauca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Asarone</td>
<td>Acorus calamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Azadirachitin</td>
<td>Azadirachta indica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Betulinic acid</td>
<td>Nelumbo nucifera, Betula utilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Calliterpenone</td>
<td>Callicapra macrophylla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Camphor</td>
<td>Cinnamomum camphora,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Cineol</td>
<td>Eucalyptus globulus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Elephantopin</td>
<td>Elephantopus scaber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Grandiflorenic acid</td>
<td>Aspilia mossambicensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Helenin</td>
<td>Inula racemosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Himachalol</td>
<td>Cedrus deodara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Jatamansin</td>
<td>Nardostachys jatamansi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Kaurenoic acid</td>
<td>Aspilia mossambicensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Menthol</td>
<td>Mentha spicata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Myricadiol</td>
<td>Myrica nagi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Palasonin</td>
<td>Butea frondosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Safranal</td>
<td>Crocus sativus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Salacinol</td>
<td>Salacia reticulata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Santonin</td>
<td>Artemisia santonica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Stemmin C</td>
<td>Solenostemma arghel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Stemnoside A</td>
<td>Solenostemma arghel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Stemnoside B</td>
<td>Solenostemma arghel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Thymol</td>
<td>Thymus vulgaris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Valerianic acid</td>
<td>Valeriana officinalis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 5.4.14 Withanolides

These are a group of naturally occurring oxygenated ergostane type steroids having lactone in side chain and 2-en-1-one system in ring A (Fig. 5.248).
Withanolides isolated from the leaves of *Withania somnifera* have shown significant antitumor and immunomodulator activity. *Coagulin F* and *coagulin G* isolated from *Withania coagulens* have anti fungal properties. 3 beta–hydroxy 2, -3-dihydrowithanolide E, present in fruits, have significant hepatoprotective and anti-inflammatory activity. *Withaferin A* (Fig. 5.176) and withanolide E have immunosuppressant activity.

**Withanolides of W. somnifera**

Withanolides were first isolated from *W. somnifera* hence the name withanolide. Chemically, they are a group of naturally occurring oxygenated ergostane type steroids having lactone in side chain and 2-en-1-one system in ring A. Velde and Lavie reported $\alpha$, $\beta$, $\gamma$, $\delta$-trihydroxy witha-5, 24-dienolide from *W. somnifera* chemotype 3. 7α, 27-hydroxy-1-oxo- witha-2, 5-24-trienolide have been reported from *W. somnifera* chemotype 3.

Withanolide S has been reported from from the leaves of *W. somnifera*. Kirson, Glotter and Withanolides Q and R have been reported from the offspring of Indian chemotype 1 and 3 of *W. somnifera*. Withasomnilide, withasomniferabolide, somniferanolide and somnwithanolide have been reported from the stem bark of *W. somnifera*. A new compound, chlorohydrin 11 has been reported. 27-O-glucosides (sitoinoside IX and X) were reported from from roots of *W. somnifera*. Withasomidienone have been reported.

The withanolides reported from *W. somnifera* are tabulated below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SNo</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pharmacological activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>20β-hydroxy-1-oxo-(22R)-witha-2,5,24-trienolide, withacoagulin and a known withanolide, 17β-hydroxy-14α, 20α-epoxy-1-oxo-(22R)-witha-3,5,24-trienolide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>27-deoxywithaferin A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>27-hydroxy withanolide A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 5.14 contd...*
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>3β-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro withanolide F</td>
<td>Hepatoprotective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>3-β-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-withanolide</td>
<td>Antibacterial, antitumor, immunomodulator and anti-inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>4β-hydroxy-withanolide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Ashwagandholine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>chlorohyrdin II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Coagulin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Compound WS-1</td>
<td>Hypno-sedative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Compound WS-2</td>
<td>Antibacterial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Jaborosalactone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Sitoindside-IX,X</td>
<td>Immunomodulator and C.N.S effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sominolide, soinone, withasomnilide, withasomiferabolide, somiferanolide and sommwithanolide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Somniferanolide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Somnwithanolide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Withacoagin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Withaferinil</td>
<td>Antitumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td>Antitumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td>Antifeedent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Withanol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Withanol-5 ,20α, (R)-dihydroxy-6α,7α-epoxy-1-oxo-5α -with a-2,24-dienolide</td>
<td>Immunomodulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Withanone</td>
<td>Antitumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Withanoside</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Withaphysanolide A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Withasomidienone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Withasomiferabolide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Withasomnilide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Withastramonolide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phytochemicals 189

Withaferin A

27-deoxywithaferin A

Withanone
Table 5.15 Withanolides from other medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. No</th>
<th>Name of the withanolide</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>20beta-hydroxy-1-oxo-(22R)-witha-2,5,24-trienolide; Withacoagulin; 17beta-hydroxy-14-alpha, 20alpha-epoxy-1-oxo-(22R)-witha-3-5,24-trienolide</td>
<td><em>Withania coagulans</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>6alpha,7alpha-epoxy-5alpha,17beta-dihydroxy-1-oxowitha-2,24-dienolide and 17-Epiacnistin-A</td>
<td><em>Discopodium penninervium</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Bracteosin A, bracteosin B and bracteosin C</td>
<td><em>Ajuga bracteosa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Chantriolides A and B</td>
<td><em>Tacca chantrieri</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Cilistadiol, cilistepoxide and cilistol-A</td>
<td><em>Solanum sisymbifolium</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.15 contd...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. No</th>
<th>Name of the withanolide</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Cinerolide, 24,25-dihydrowithanolide S, visconolide, physalaconte, withanolide S and 4beta-hydroxywithanolide E</td>
<td><em>Physalis cinerascens</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Daturalactone-4; Nic-3 (hyoscyamylactol); 16alpha-acetoxyhyoscyamylactol</td>
<td><em>Hyoscyamus niger</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Daturametelins C, D, E, F and G</td>
<td><em>Datura metel</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Ixocarpalactone A, 2,3-dihydro-3β-methoxyixocarpalactone A,2,3-dihydro-3β-methoxyixocarpalactone B, 2,3-dihydroixocarpalactone B, and 4β,7β,20R-trihydroxy-1-oxoitha-2,5-dien-22,26-olide</td>
<td><em>Physalis philadelphica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Physachenolides A - E.</td>
<td><em>Physalis chenopodifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Physagulins L, M and N, Physagulin D and quercetin 3-O-rhamnosyl-(1--&gt;6)-galactoside</td>
<td><em>Physalis angulata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Plantagiolides A-E and chantriolide A</td>
<td><em>Tacca plantaginea</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Subtrifloralactones A-E, new C-18 oxygenated withanolide, 13β-hydroxymethylsubtrifloralactone E and philadelphia lactone A</td>
<td><em>Deprea subtriflora</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Two new withanolide glycosides and 18-acetoxywithanolide D and 18-acetoxy-5,6-deoxy-5-withanolide D</td>
<td><em>Dunalia brachyacantha</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Withaferin A and witharistatin</td>
<td><em>Withania aristata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Withangulatin A and withangulatin I</td>
<td><em>Physalis angulata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Withanolide 1 and 2</td>
<td><em>Jaborosa caulescens</em> (var. caulescens and var. bipinnatifida)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Withanolide-7</td>
<td><em>Physalis minima</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Withanone</td>
<td><em>Discopodium penninervium, Exodeconus maritimus, Withania somnifera</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Witharifeen and daturalicin</td>
<td><em>Datura innoxia</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13 β-hydroxymethylsubtrifloralactone E
5.4.15 Xanthones

These are phenolic product of a triketide precursor and benzoid unit. *Swerchinin* from *Swertia chirata* lowered blood glucose in normal and streptozocin induced mild and severe diabetes in rats (Fig. 5.251). The effect of swerchirin was comparable to tolbutamide. Swerchirin has demonstrated a protective effect on hematopoiesis in 6-Co-irradiated mice. *S.chirata* also contains a novel dimeric xanthone, *chiratanin*. 

Fig. 5.250 Structure of bioactive withanolides.

Fig. 5.251 Structure of Swerchirin.
**Gentiacaulein** isolated from *Swertia kochiana* has vasodilator activity. **Gentisin** (Fig. 5.252) and **isogentisin** (Fig. 5.253) from *Gentiana lutea* have significant mutagenic activity. **Gentisein** (Fig. 5.254) is also isolated from *G. lutea*.

![Fig. 5.252 Structure of Gentisin.](image1)

![Fig. 5.253 Structure of Isogentisin.](image2)

![Fig. 5.254 Structure of Gentisein.](image3)

The ethanol extract of the bark of *Garcinia dulcis* furnished five xanthones; **garciniaxanthone** showed inhibitory effects on the growth of *P. falciparum* with IC50 value of 0.96 mg/ml.

### Table 5.16 Xanthones from medicinal plants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the xanthone</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Decussatin</td>
<td><em>Swertia decussata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Dixylopyranoside</td>
<td><em>Swertia thomsonii, S. franchetiana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Gentiacaulein</td>
<td><em>Gentiana kochiana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Gentiakochianin</td>
<td><em>Gentiana kochiana</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Gentisin</td>
<td><em>Gentiana lutea</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Swerchirin</td>
<td><em>Swertia chirayila, S. japonica and S. mussotii</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Swertiapuniside</td>
<td><em>Swertia punicea</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.16 Miscellaneous compounds

5.4.16.1 Diarylheptanoids

Diarylheptanoids are rare compounds found in the family Zingiberaceae. They are found in rhizomes of *Zingiber officinale*, *Alpinia galanga*, and *Hedychium spicatum*. Animal studies have shown diarylheptanoids to be potent anti-inflammatory agents as they selectively inhibit cycloxygenase enzyme responsible for inflammation. Gingerenone A and B and galangol are common examples. The pungent odor of *Z. officinale* and *A. galanga* is due to the presence of these compounds. This group of compounds has not been thoroughly investigated for pharmacological activity.

5.4.16.2 Isoflavones

Isoflavones are found in *Glycine max* (soybean). Clinical research has demonstrated soy isoflavones to be effective in menstrual diseases. They also have an antioxidant activity. Isoflavones belong to a group of compounds known as phyto-estrogens. The isoflavone content of soybean is 10 to 20 times more than other plants. *Genistein* is a potent tyrosine inhibitor, where as *daidezein* also has an antioxidant activity (Fig. 5.255). Recently isoflavones have been investigated for hypolipidemic activity.

![Genistein and Daidezein](image)

Fig. 5.255 Structure of soy isoflavones.

5.4.16.3 Furochromones

Furochromones are a group of coumarins, derived from γ-benzopyrone. They are related to furanocoumarins and are present in plants of the family Apiaceae and Rutaceae. *Ammi visnaga* is a potential source of furochromones like *khellin* and *visnagin*. Khellin was once used as coronary vasodilator drug (Fig. 5.256).
5.4.16.4 Phenylpropanoids

These contain a three-carbon side chain attached to a phenol. Common examples are hydroxycoumarins, lignans and phenyl-propenes. Volatile oil of *Myristica fragrans* contains phenylpropanoids, including myristicin, saffrole and elemicin (Fig. 5.257).
Hydroxycoumarins

Hydroxycoumarins represents another group of coumarins (Figs. 5.258, 5.259), which are widely distributed in Apiaceae and Gramineae. They are found in *Aesculus hippocastanum*, *Angelica pubescens*, *Artemisia lactiflora* and *Crateagus oxycantha*. *Callophylloide* and *Jacareubin* coumarins derived from *Calophyllum inophyllum* have antiarrhythmic, coronary vasodilator, anticoagulant, anti-inflammatory and antiarthritic and gastro protective activities, respectively. *Calophyllum apetalum* contains coumarin named *aperalolide*.

Lignans

*Sargentodoxaceae*, lignan from *Sargenodoxa cuneata* has anthelmintic activity. *Termilignan*, *Thannilignan* and *Anoligan B* isolated from *Terminalia bellerica* demonstrated significant anti HIV, antimalarial and antifungal effects *in vitro*. *Sesamin* and *sesamolin* are lignan derivatives found in sesame oil. The flavonol lignans *hydnocarpin*, *hydnowightin*
and neohydncarpin isolated from the seeds of Hydnocarpus sp are lipid lowering, anti-inflammatory and antitumoral in animal experiments. Schisandra chinensis is used in chronic persistent hepatitis. The active principles are various biphenylcotoenoic lignans called waweizisu C, wuweizichun B, schisantherin A,B,C,D which all lower SGPT levels in chronic viral hepatitis. Lignans of Phyllanthus niruri deserve special mention. They have antiviral and hepatoprotective properties. Phyllanthin, hypophyllanthin and isontetralin are major lignans (Fig. 5.252).

7-hydroxymatairesinol, lignan found in Picea abies (Norway spruce) is precursor of enterolactone (Fig. 5.261). It is antioxidant and anticancer. Lariciresinol obtained from flaxseed is reported to be antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, and antidiabetic (Fig. 5.262).
Lignans of *Myristica argentea* including *erythro-austrobailignan-6* and *meso-dihydroguaiaretic acid, myristargenol A*, and *myristargenol B* from the aril of the seeds, show some levels of activity against *Streptococcus mutans*. Erythro-austrobailignan-6, meso-dihydroguaiaretic acid, and *nectandrin-B* (Fig. 5.185) exert an antiproliferative effect on MCF-7 cells as well as antioxidant activity on the 1,1-diphenyl-2-picrylhydrazyl radical. In addition, Nectandrin-B inhibits the enzymatic activity of 17β hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase and antiaromatase activities (Fig. 5.263).

Tetrahydroyfuran lignans like *grandisin* (Fig. 5.264) and *veraguensin* (Fig. 5.265) have been demonstrated to prevent the transmission of Trypanosoma cruzi by blood transfusion.
Phytochemicals

Fig. 5.265 Structure of Veraguensin.

_Urtica dioica_ contains lignans including _secoisolariciresinol-9-O-glucoside, neo-olivil, and neo-olivil-4-O-glucoside._

**Phenyl-propenes**

_Eugenol_ is a common example (Fig. 5.266). It is used as a dental analgesic.

5.4.16.5 _Naphthodianthrones_

Naphthodianthrones are derivatives of anthracene. Anthracenes have been discussed under glycosides. The main reason for discussing naphthodianthrones separately is that they have gained importance because of the pharmacological significance of hypericin present in _Hypericum perforatum_. Naphthodianthrones are known to cause photosensitivity. Naphthodianthrone, fagopyrin is present in _Fagopyrum esculentum_ (Fig. 5.267).
5.4.16.6 Pyranocoumarins

Pyranocoumarins are a class of coumarin compounds. They are rare compounds and only a few of them have been investigated. **Costataolide-A** (Fig. 5.268) isolated from *Caulophyllum acuminata* has anti-HIV activity. Pyranocoumarin, **luvangelin** isolated from *Aegle marmelos* has gastroprotective activity. **Ceylatin** has been reported from *Atalantia ceylanica* (Fig. 5.269).
5.4.16.7 Organosulfur compounds

Garlic contains a number of bioactive compounds (Fig. 5.270). The most distinguishing are the organosulfur compounds alliin (S-allyl-L-cysteine sulfoxide, an odorless sulfur-containing amino acid derivative), and allicin (diallyldisulfide-oxide, responsible for the pungent odor of garlic) and ajoene.

When garlic is crushed or ground, the enzyme alliinase converts alliin to allicin. Allicin is thought to be responsible for many of the therapeutic benefits of garlic. Several investigations suggest that these sulfur compounds may inhibit the induction and growth of cancer. These benefits do not appear to be limited to a specific carcinogen, tissue or species. Ajoene has antiplatelet activity.

References and further reading

Agarwal RR, and Dutt SS. 1936. Chemical examination of punarnava or B. diffusa Linn. 2. Isolation of an alkaloid punarnavine. Chem. Abst. 30: 3585.


Phytochemicals


Selvam C, and Jachak SM. 2004. A cyclooxygenase (COX) inhibitory biflavonoid from the seeds of Semecarpus anacardium. J. Ethnopharmacol. 95, 209.
Phytochemicals


Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology


Chapter 6

Phytochemicals Research-Emerging Concepts

6.1 Introduction

The active principles in medicinal plants are chemical compounds known as secondary plant products or metabolites. Primary plant metabolites can be considered as those metabolites essential to the life of the plant. Ernst Stahl was the pioneer researcher of secondary metabolites. Many biologically active principles have been discovered from the plant kingdom.

Some of them discourage herbivores, other inhibit bacterial or fungal pathogens. The biological significance of many secondary metabolites is not exactly known. Secondary metabolites of *Rhodiola rosea* are depicted in Fig. 6.1.

Secondary metabolites are produced by routes other than the normal metabolic pathways, mostly after the phase of active growth and under conditions of deficiency. Normally the following pathways are involved in biosynthesis of secondary metabolites:

1. The acetate-malonate pathway
2. Shikiamte pathway
3. Hydroxybenzoate pathway
4. Homegentisate pathway

Primary and secondary compound synthesis in plants is represented in Fig. 6.2.

Biosynthesis of specialty phytochemicals has been represented in the Figs. 6.3 and 6.4.

The active principle or constituent of a drug is usually an alkaloid or glycoside, on the presence of which the characteristic therapeutic action of the substance largely depends. Herbal remedies have been used for centuries but more recently the compounds that are active have
been identified and this has enabled them to be extracted and purified. Organic chemists have then been able to provide the molecules in vitro and so produce them on larger scales. History clearly implies that herbal medicines will continue to play a role in the modern drug discovery and development of new drugs. The principal concepts of this process are shown in Fig. 6.5.

As suggested in the Figure 6.5, not only single active principles, but also active fractions are validated and improved prescriptions can be investigated for new drug discovery. However, issues should be addressed by transferring herbal medicines from folkloric to mainstream international pharmaceutical use, such as supply, quality control, safety, and proven efficacy. High quality, batch-to-batch consistency, and efficacy/safety must be guaranteed using stringent quality control measures including Good Agricultural Practice, Good Manufacturing Practice, and Good Clinical Practice, at each step in the development of standardized new medicines from herbal medicine as shown in Fig. 6.6.

The biological signal for a plant to synthesize initial phytochemicals is maturation of the fruit, vegetable and seed. Different parts of a medicinal plant are picked for use in medicine before the phytochemicals are present. This may be described as the basis for picking the medicinal part of a drug at an appropriate time.
Fig. 6.2 Biosynthesis of primary and secondary metabolites in plants.
**Biosynthesis of allicin**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SO}_3^- & \rightarrow \\
\text{Cysteine} & \rightarrow \\
\text{Glutathione} & \rightarrow \\
\text{2-Carboxylpropyl-glutathione} & \rightarrow \\
\text{Gamma glutamyl peptides} & \rightarrow \\
\text{Alkyl-L-Cysteine sulfoxide} & \rightarrow \\
\text{Pyruvate+ Sulphenic acid} & \rightarrow \\
\text{Propanethial sulfoxide} & \rightarrow \\
\text{Thiosulphinates (Allicin)}
\end{align*}
\]

Fig. 6.3 Biosynthesis of allicin.

**Biosynthesis of caffeine**

1-Methyl xanthine \(\rightarrow\) Theophylline

1-Methyl AMP

AMP, GMP

7-Methyl AMP
7-Methyl GMP

7-Methyl Xanthine \(\rightarrow\) Theobromine

Caffeine

Fig. 6.4 Biosynthesis of caffeine (two pathways).
**Phytochemicals Research-Emerging Concepts**

**Fig. 6.5** Principal concepts of research on new medicines.

1. **Herbal Medicine-Origin ID/Authenticity**
2. **Production Methods/GAP**
3. **Controlled Inspections of Contaminations**
   → 4. **Raw Materials Processing**
5. **Extraction & Concentration**
6. **Chemical Fingerprinting**
7. **Pharmacological Fingerprinting**
8. **Manufacture & Dosage From (GMP & GMC to maintain batch-to-batch consistency**
9. **Preclinical & Clinical Trials (Toxicity, Pharmacokinetics & Metabolic Studies)**
10. **Standardised New Medicines**

**Fig. 6.6** Quality control for standardized new medicines.

* BDFI= Bioactivity Directed Fractionation
Chraka, the great Ayurvedic physician, defined virya as the driving force behind the therapeutic activity of the drug. According to experts, virya is comparable to active constituent of a drug. Ancient scholars developed the virya parameter to study the therapeutic efficacy of the drugs. Other alternative systems of medicine like Unani and Siddha give due importance to virya of a drug. In the Unani system of medicine, virya is known as Tasir.

CAM believes in using the drug as a whole. This does not mean that active principles have no importance in CAM health practice. Using the drug as a whole, means that the chemical constituents are present in natural synergy with each other. Each constituent contributes towards the biological activity of the medicine/formulation.

Let us differentiate between botanical extract and standardized extract. Botanical extracts are prepared by scientifically eliminating the non-beneficial parts of a plant, then continuously processing it to reach a ratio showing the amount of actual processed vs. the actual amount of beneficial finished product.

Standardized extracts are processed by scientifically isolating the active constituents desired from a plant. The scientific procedure ensures that the finished product reaches a specific percentage of the desired constituent. Standardized extracts should always show the name of the constituent that has been isolated and its percentage. They are standardized to certain limits of markers or active constituents or both. Phytochemicals and standardized herbal extracts are therapeutically potent as compared to fresh or dried material (Fig. 6.7).

During the process of extraction, certain medicinally useful constituents are lost. Like other systems of CAM, Western herbal medicine gives

Fig. 6.7 Flow chart for valued added phytochemicals.
due importance to the presence of all chemical constituents rather than a single constituent. According to experts, the standardization of herbals should be in such a way so that a safe and effective dose may be formulated.

6.2 Synergy in relation to the pharmacological action of phytomedicines

Some of the most popular and widely used phytomedicines are those consisting of St. John’s wort, Echinacea, ginkgo, garlic, kava, and valerian, which have considerable pharmacological and clinical evidence to support their use, and synergy is generally assumed to play a part in their medicinal effects (Table 5.5). Attempts are rarely made to isolate a single constituent from these extracts. In Traditional Indian Medicine (Ayurveda), Traditional Chinese Medicine, and Western Medical Herbalism, the combination of herbs are fundamental to their philosophy as well as being due to empirical observations and historical usage. As an example, pharmaceuticals containing ephedrine, atropine, and menthol, are rarely considered as phytomedicines, despite being derived from plant sources. Modern herbal medicines are usually found as whole or semi-purified extracts and ideally should be standardized for their active constituents wherever possible to ensure clinical reproducibility.

Table 6.1 In vitro and in vivo pharmacological evidences for synergy effects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phytochemicals</th>
<th>Evidences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Ginkgolides mixture/Ginkgo extract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piper methysticum</td>
<td>Kava lactones/mixture of kava lactones and extract fractions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycyrrhiza glabra</td>
<td>Licorice extracts potentiates other substances and acts as detoxifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannabis sativa</td>
<td>Cannabis extract/THC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valeriana officinalis</td>
<td>Valeriana extract/individual constituents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zingiber officinalis</td>
<td>Zingiber extract/mixture of volatile terpenoids and mixtures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypericum perforatum</td>
<td>Hypericum extract/individual constituents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


6.2.1 Synergy

Synergy means working together. It occurs when the combined action of constituents is greater than would be expected from a consideration of individual constituents. In herbal medicine, better results are obtained with whole plant extracts rather than with isolated constituents. For example, the side-effects of reseprine are not usually found with the crude drug of sarpagandha. If true synergy is occurring in phytomedicines, standardization becomes even more important, since the ratio between
Synergistic agents is critical, and small changes can make results unpredictable. If combination effects are merely additive, changes in the ratio are less crucial. It may therefore be significant to define synergy using the term ‘polyvalent action’.

Synergy is deemed present if the total effect of a combination is greater than would be expected from the sum of effects. This can be expressed as follows:

\[ E(\text{da}, \text{db}) = E(\text{da}) + E(\text{db}) \]

Polyvalent action includes various effects of multiple active constituents acting in combination, in harmony and possible in synergy. In conventional medicine it is common practice to treat a single complaint as in cancer. This applies more to plant extracts, since combinations are already present within the plant. There are good reasons for not isolating active constituents from herbs like St. John’s wort, hawthorn, hops, purple cone flower and black cohosh. In herbals like garlic and valerian, active constituents are unstable and attempts to isolate them would render the extract ineffective.

**Example 1: Hypericum perforatum**

*H. perforatum* is traditionally used for the treatment of depression, insomnia, and anxiety. A large body of animal and human clinical research supports its antidepressant effects. Several chemical constituents have been identified in *H. perforatum*. Hypericin, flavanols, and xanthones have been shown to inhibit both monoamine oxidase and/or catechol-o-methyltransferase.

It has been suggested that exacerbated hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis activity has been associated with the incidence of depression. Corticotropin-releasing factor is thought to be major determinant in the regulation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal activity via activation of CRF (1) receptors. Pseudohypericin (Fig. 6.8) demonstrated antagonistic activity on CRF (1). Thus antidepressant activity of *H. perforatum* is not only due to hypericin (Fig. 6.8) or hyperforin (Fig. 5.204, chapter 5) but pseudohypericin also contributes to the antidepressant mechanism.
Fig. 6.8 Possible antidepressant constituents of *H. perforatum*.
Hyperforin is a reuptake inhibitor of serotonin, norepinephrine, dopamine, GABA, and L-glutamate in the nanomolar range (Table 6.2). Radio-labelled hyperforin crosses blood-brain barrier. Four trioxxygenated xanthones isolated from the plant and hyperforin-enriched fraction, when combined in suboptimal dosages of 2.5 mg each, caused a significant antidepressant effect which was slightly greater in extent than exhibited by either the hyperforin-enriched- or the xanthone-enriched fraction.

Table 6.2 Inhibitory effects of St. John’s wort extracts and pure hyperforin on monoamine oxidase activity and synaptosomal uptake of neurotransmitters. The table shows IC50 values, i.e., the concentration required for 50% inhibition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Methanolic extract (1.5% hyperforin)</th>
<th>CO2-extract (38.8% hyperforin)</th>
<th>Hyperforin (100%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAO-A activity</td>
<td>120µg/mL</td>
<td>520µg/mL</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAO-B activity</td>
<td>370µg/mL</td>
<td>&gt;500µg/mL</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of serotonin uptake</td>
<td>2.4±0.4 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.26±0.06 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.11±0.02 µg/mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of noradrenaline uptake</td>
<td>4.5±2.1 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.25±0.08 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.04±0.01 µg/mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of dopamine uptake</td>
<td>0.9±0.1 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.06±0.03 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.06±0.01 µg/mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of GABA uptake</td>
<td>1.1±0.06 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.12±0.04 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.10±0.02 µg/mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inhibition of L-glutamate uptake</td>
<td>21.25±10.47 µg/mL</td>
<td>2.83±1.8 µg/mL</td>
<td>0.45±0.37 µg/mL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Bhattacharya, Chakrabarti, Chatterjee (1998).

A flavonoid fraction obtained from crude *H. perforatum* was active in the forced swimming test. The fraction was further separated into two sub fractions. Both the sub fractions were active in the forced swimming test within varied doses. Further work on first sub fraction showed that the main constituents were hyperoside (Fig. 6.8), isoquercitrin, miquelianin and quercetin. The second sub fraction contained small amounts of hyperoside and astiblin. Further testing on these compounds showed that except for quercetin all the rest were active in the forced swimming test.

Pharmacokinetic synergy may occur with *H. perforatum*, where a combination of constituents improves its oral bioavailability. Procyanidin B2 (Fig. 5.224, Chapter 5) and hyperoside of *H. perforatum* extract improves the water solubility of hypericin and thereby increases its pharmacological activity in the forced swimming test of Porsolt. Procyanidin increases the water solubility of hypericin, thus increasing its pharmacokinetic availability.
Example 2: Cannabis sativa (hemp)
The herb has received much attention recently because of the detection of an endogenous cannabinoid system in the human brain and the immune system. The endogenous cannabinoid system plays a significant role in memory, appetite, lactation, and emesis. Muscle-relaxant, appetite-stimulating, and analgesic effects of (-) trans-delta⁹-tetrahydrocannabinol or THC (Fig. 5.205, Chapter 5), are of great interest. A comparative study of cannabis has shown better antispastic activity than THC, as measured in an immunogenic model of multiple sclerosis. The synergistic effect demonstrated with cannabis extract is probably due to presence of cannabidiol or CBD (Fig. 6.9) in the extract, which elevates the level of THC in the brain and at the same time, attenuates the undesired anxiolytic effect of THC. At the same time CBD amplifies the antispastic effect of THC. Amplification of the antispastic effect is not understood but it is assumed that CBD increases the permeation of THC into the muscles.

Example 3: Cratageus oxycaenth (hawthorn)
Procyanidins and flavone C-glycosides appear to be the main constituents responsible for cardiac tonic effect of the plant. In vitro studies have demonstrated the inhibitory effect of hawthorn extract containing procyanidins and flavonoids on angiotensin converting enzyme. As one is aware of the antioxidant, anti-inflammatory and antiplatelet activities of flavonoids, it is necessary to produce hawthorn extract having both procyanidins and flavonoids.

Example 4: Piper methysticum (kava kava)
The plant is well known for anti-anxiety and sedative effects. The active constituents are known as kavalactones or kavapyrones including kavain, dihydrokavain, yongonin, methysticin, and dihydromethysticin. Kavalactones cross the blood-brain barrier and behavioral effects occur at micromolar concentrations. Kavalactones enhance binding to the GABA⁶ receptor in low micromolar concentrations, through a non-benzodiazepine mechanism. They also block voltage gated Na. sup.+ and Ca. sup.+ channels in micromolar concentrations. Further, kavalactones
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

interact with monoamine oxidase systems by blocking the reuptake of neurotransmitters and inhibiting MAO sub B.

Combined kavalactones, kavain and dihydromethysticin (Fig. 6.10), act in an additive manner to inhibit Ca. sup. + channels. Yongonin given with other kava lactones (i.p.) reaches levels 20 times higher in the brain than when given alone. Similarly, kavain levels in the brain are doubled when given in combination of other kavalactones.

![Fig. 6.10 Structure of principal kava lactones.]

6.3 Multidrug and multitarget therapy with phytomedicine

In the last decade, two revolutionary shifts occurred in classical traditional medicine:

A. Gradual withdrawal from the dogma of monosubstance therapy and an increasing transition to the treatment of patients with drug combinations.

B. Transition to a new kind of multitarget therapy, which is directed primarily towards the activation of defense, protective and repair mechanisms of the body rather than towards the direct destruction of the damaging agents.

Phytomedicine has long followed and developed the above mentioned strategies by using the monoextracts or extract combinations containing mixtures of bioactive compounds. The strategies are based on therapeutic experiences and the consideration that a complex pathophysiological process can be influenced more effectively and with less side-effects by combination of several low dosage compounds.
6.4 Phytomedicine and cancer

Recently, numerous reviews of plant derived chemo preventive compounds have identified their role in the treatment of cancer. The chemo preventive compounds, precisely known as phytopharmaceuticals, are dietary ingredients, which being food derived, are considered pharmacologically safe. Some of the common chemo- preventive dietary compounds derived from dietary ingredients are depicted in Fig. 6.11.

Chemo-preventive plant compounds affect all phases of the cancer process, i.e., tumor initiation, promotion and progression. Botanical medicines are complex natural mixtures of pharmacological multitaskers, simultaneously exerting influence on different levels and via different mechanisms. By contrast, pharmaceutical drugs are classically single synthetic compounds, ideally interfering or disrupting specific mechanism.

6.5 Phytochemicals and bacterial resistance

Recently there has been a growing interest in characterizing new antimicrobial substances from medicinal plants. The interest can be ascribed to three factors:

1. In terms of plant ecology, plants produce antibacterial metabolites as part of chemical defense.
2. There are countless examples of plants, which have been used topically and systemically to treat bacterial infections.
3. Functional group chemistry, chirality and chemical diversity of phytochemicals.
Hyperforin, the acylphloroglucinol from Hypericum perforatum, has been reported to have antibiotic properties. However, it has very low minimum inhibitory concentration (MICs) against methicillin resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) and penicillin resistant variants. Sinaicione from Hypericum sinaicum and chinensin from Hypericum chinense are other plant-derived antibacterials.

Filicinic acid derivatives: drummondin D, isodrummondin D, drummondin E, and drummondin F, extracted from Hypericum drummondii possess strong antibiotic activity against the Gram-positive bacteria S. aureus and Bacillus subtilis and the acid fast bacterium Mycobacterium smegmatis. Falcarindiol from roots of the Chinese medicinal plant Angelica dahurica have been reported effective against effluxing multidrug-resistant variants of S. aureus.

Many clinically relevant bacteria express efflux mechanisms of resistance. By these mechanisms, the bacteria are able to prevent penetration of drugs into side cells. Multidrug resistance (MDR) is posing a real problem in treating bacterial infections. Recently phytochemicals have been added with antibiotics to inhibit multi-drug resistance.

Berberine (Fig. 5.5, Chapter 5) and flavonolignan, methoxyhydnocarpin (Fig. 6.12) have been isolated from Berberis sp. Antibacterial activity of berberine is potentiated by methoxyhydnocarpin. This observation has led to the possibility that plants produce both antibacterial compounds and compounds which target bacterial efflux mechanisms to inhibit possible resistance to latent plant antibacterials in bacteria in their environment.

![Fig. 6.12 Structure of 5’ methoxyhydnocarpin.](image)

### 6.6 Role of phytochemicals in healthcare system

Medicinal plants are a significant source of synthetic and herbal drugs in India and China and have been on the forefront when one refers to phyto drugs. The traditional systems of medicines: Ayurveda, Siddha, Unani, Western Herbal Medicine, Traditional Chinese Medicine and Homeopathy have roots in medicinal herbs. A number of distinguished researchers have
dealt with herbal medicine and due to its accessibility to traditions; it is still practiced even by lay practitioners.

Sterneur isolated morphine from *Papaver somniferum* (opium poppy) and showed the medical profession that certain phytochemicals produced in plant cells are responsible for pharmacological activity. Later, other alkaloids isolated from opium poppy were investigated for their pharmacological activities. Codeine showed antitussive activity and papaverine antispasmodic activity. The opium based extracts have been utilized for various pharmacological activities, and a number of alkaloids distributed in the plant have different pharmacological activities.

Scientific validation of phytodrugs has been always questioned, but with recent advances and publication of clinical trials, the researchers and the public are viewing herbal products with more of an open mind. In the commercial market, medicinal herbs are used as raw drugs, extracts or tinctures. Isolated active constituents are used for applied research. There has been a dramatic rise in the sale of phyto products like *Allium sativum*, *Hypericum perforatum*, *Spirulina*, *Echinacea angustifolia*, *Ginkgo biloba* and *Silybum marianum*.

Among phytochemicals distributed in plants, flavonoids sterols and xanthones are of particular interest for a wide range of medicinal activities. Recently several research papers have been published favoring efficacy of these specialty phytochemicals as medicinal agents (see the table below).

Table 6.3 Number of recent publications on flavonoids, sterols and xanthones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Class of flavonoids</th>
<th>Number of publications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Epigallocatechin gallate</td>
<td>433,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Epigallocatechins</td>
<td>1,180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Polyphenols</td>
<td>1,920,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Proanthocyanidins</td>
<td>446,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Pycogenol</td>
<td>1,850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Sterols</td>
<td>1,870,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Xanthones</td>
<td>2,73,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.7 Current research on dietary phytochemicals

Dietary phytochemicals are also known as phytonutrients. Phytonutrients are nutrients derived from plant material that have been shown to be necessary for sustaining human life (distinction form phytochemicals). About 800 phytonutrients are known to exist in plant kingdom.

The National Cancer Institute recommends eating at least 5–9 servings of fruits and vegetables per day. Other reputable sources recommend at least 9 servings for men, 7 servings for women, and 5 servings for children.
Research shows that fruits and vegetables are powerful defenders of our health. Research supporting a critical role for fruits and vegetables in good health grows stronger all the time. Scientists now agree that fruits and vegetables should be the foundation of a healthy diet. Phytochemicals in fruits and vegetables can also help reduce your risk of many chronic diseases including cancer, high blood pressure, diabetes, heart disease, stroke and other diseases.

6.7.1 Phytochemicals of Cinnamomum zeylanicum L. (cinnamon)

Recent studies have found that cinnamon may have a beneficial effect on blood sugar. Sixty people with type 2 diabetes took 1, 3, or 6 grams of cinnamon in pill form daily, an amount roughly equivalent to one quarter of a teaspoon to 1 teaspoon of cinnamon.

After 40 d, all 3 amounts of cinnamon reduced fasting blood glucose by 18 to 29%, triglycerides by 23 to 30%, LDL cholesterol by 7 to 27%, and total cholesterol by 12 to 26%.

Another study looked at the effect of cinnamon on 79 people with type 2 diabetes who were not on insulin therapy but were taking oral anti-diabetic medications or modifying their diet. They took approximately 3 grams of cinnamon or a placebo 3 times a day for 4 mon. There was a significant reduction in blood glucose in the people taking cinnamon compared to people taking the placebo. Surprisingly, there was no difference in glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1C) levels, a test that measures how well blood sugar has been controlled during the previous 3 to 4 mon. Coumarin compounds are considered to be active constituents of cinnamon.

6.7.2 Ellagitannins of Punica granatum L. (pomegranate)

A recent animal study from University of California reported that ellagitannins present in the fruit of pomegranate have a possible protective role in prostate cancer. Researchers found that ellagitannins accumulate in the prostate and it may be a mode of cancer prevention action. Punicalagin was suggested as a possible anticancer agent.

6.7.3 Flavonoids (phytoestrogens) of Epimedium brevicornum Max (hoary goat weed)

A 24-mon randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trial conducted at the Chinese University of Hong Kong and Shanghai University of Chinese Medicine reported the beneficial effect of hoary goat weed in postmenopausal osteoporosis. Eighty five participants were assigned a
daily dose of hoary goat weed or placebo. All the women received 300 mg of calcium daily. According to researchers, flavonoids (phytoestrogens) of hoary goat weed may be responsible for increase in bone mineral density at the hip and lumber region thus exerting a useful effect in osteoporosis. The herb contains iicarin and flavonoids genistein and daidezin.

6.7.4 Phytochemicals of Curcurbita ficifolia L. (pumpkin)

An experimental study conducted at the East Normal China University reported hypoglycemic and antioxidant activity of fruit extract of pumpkin. According to researchers, the extract may repair damaged β cells in the pancreas thus increasing levels of insulin (insulinotropic effect). D-chiro-inositol was proposed to be active constituent known to mediate insulin activity (Fig. 6.13).

![Fig. 6.13 Structure of D-chiro-inositol.](image)

6.7.5 Phytochemicals of Persea americana Mill. (Avocado)

A study from the US in 2005 described the inhibitory effect of avocado on the growth of prostate cancer. Recent studies conducted at the Ohio State University reported that phytochemicals found in the fruit can prevent the onset of cancer and even kill some cancer cells. According to experts, phytochemicals extracted from the fruit strike the multiple signaling pathways and prevent cancer by inducing diseased cell death. The phytochemicals have no reaction on healthy cells. The fruit contains proteins (25%) vitamin C, vitamin E, unsaturated fatty acids and sesquiterpenes. The fruit contains zero sodium.

6.7.6 Phytochemical (1-deoxynojirimycin) of Morus alba L. (mulberry)

A human study conducted in Japan reported that food grade extract of mulberry is a potent inhibitor of enzyme glucosidase. The enzyme regulates the digestion of carbohydrates. The activity is due to the presence of 1-deoxynojirimycin (DNJ), an antibiotic compound present in mulberry leaves. The study indicated that the single oral administration of 0.8 and
1.2 g of 1-deoxynojirimycin enriched powder significantly suppressed the elevation of postprandial blood glucose and secretion of insulin (Fig. 6.14).

6.8 Current research on purified phytochemicals

6.8.1 4-(methylthio)-3-butenyl isothiocyanate (MTBITC)

It is a unique chemical found in *Raphanus sativus* and the breakdown product of glucoraphasatin, a glucosinolate present in significant amounts only in radishes. It resembles sulforaphane (found in broccoli) in medicinal properties. The study, conducted by researchers Palmyra, WI, examined that 4-(methylthio)-3-butenyl isothiocyanate is potent inducer of Phase I and Phase II liver detoxification enzymes (Fig. 6.15).

6.8.2 Brassinolide

It belongs to group of chemical constituents known as brassinosteroids or brassins (Fig. 6.16) and is a plant hormone. They were first discovered in *Brassica napus* pollen. It has an antiviral activity against herpes simplex type 1 and 2 similar to acyclovir.
6.8.3 Capsaicin

(Fig. 5.205, Chapter 5): It is well-known for counterirritant and rubifacient properties.

Further research

Anti-obesity activity
The researchers, from the National Chung Hsing University in Taiwan, have noted that previous studies suggest that obesity may be reduced by preventing immature fat cells (adipocytes) from developing into mature cells, and other studies have shown that capsaicin can decrease the amount of fat tissue and decrease fat levels in the blood.

6.8.4 Curcumin

Is a coloring matter of turmeric. It is known for its anti-inflammatory property.

Further research

Anticancer activity
Research at the University of Texas has demonstrated that curcumin blocks the activity of a hormone having a link with the development of colorectal cancer. Other studies have demonstrated that curcumin inhibits melanoma cell growth and destroys cancer cells. In addition, animal research conducted at the University of Texas reported that curcumin prevented the spread of breast cancer cells to lungs.

Hypocholesteremic activity
Research from Germany has reported that curcumin has the ability to reduce high levels of blood-cholesterol. In the study, the effect of different doses of curcumin (2–50 micromoles) was investigated on genetics of human hepatocytes. A significant effect was found with 10 micromoles. Furthermore, curcumin was non-hepatotoxic.

Immunomodulator activity
A human-study in isolated macrophages the US reported that curcumin boosts the body’s ability to clear the build up of plaques in the brain that are linked to Alzheimer’s disease. The isolated macrophages were exposed to a curcumin-derived compound for 24 h and then β-amyloid. It was found that macrophages from three out of six Alzheimer’s disease patients showed improved uptake or ingestion of the waste product compared to the patients’ macrophages not treated with curcumin.
6.8.5 Glyceollins

Glyceollins are a novel class of soybean phytoalexins with potential cancer-protective antiestrogenic effects. These preliminary findings suggest that soybean glyceollins are natural compounds with potential estrogen-modulating properties in the breast.

6.8.6 Hyperforin

(Fig. 5.192, Chapter 5): It is considered to be the antidepressant constituent of standardized extract of Hypericum perforatum.

Further research

Anticancer and anti-angiogenic activity

Hyperforin has been reported to check progress of cancer and leukemia.

6.8.7 Oleocanthal

Is present in extra-virgin olive oil. It is a natural anti-inflammatory compound that has a potency and profile similar to that of ibuprofen. In addition it has an antioxidant activity (Fig. 6.17).

![Fig. 6.17 Structure of oleocanthal.](image)

6.8.8 Silymarin (Fig. 5.121)

It is regarded as gold standard in the treatment of liver diseases.

Further research

Anti-psoriatic activity

Silymarin has been reported to be efficacious in psoriasis. The ability of silymarin to inhibit leukotriene synthesis and hepatoprotective action is believed to contribute to anti-psoriatic activity.

Hypoglycemic activity

Researchers at the Institute of Medicinal Plants in Teheran, Iran reported blood sugar lowering activity of silymarin in patients of type 2 diabetes.
6.8.9 Stevioside (Fig. 5.181)
It is a sweet-tasting glycoside isolated from the leaves of *Stevia rebaudiana*.

Further research

*Antihypertensive activity*

Studies have shown that intravenous injection and powdered drug was able to induce hypotension in hypertensive dogs.

6.8.10 Withaferin-A (Fig. 5.249)
It is a well-defined withanolide present in Indian medicinal plant *Withania somnifera* and known for anticancer and radiomodifying effects.

Further research

- Research done in America has shown that withaferin-A has the power to inhibit RNA and protein production which can lead to increased cancer death.

6.8.11 Zingerone (Fig. 5.194)
An animal study conducted at Taiwan’s China Medical University has demonstrated anti diarrheal activity of ginger. Ginger extracts and its bioactive components blocked binding of heat-labile enterotoxin from E.coli to specific receptors on cells in mouse intestine. The binding of the toxin to the receptor results in the case of diarrhea. Biological-activity-guided searching activities lead to zingerone as a possible anti-diarrheal agent.

6.9 Phytochemicals as nutraceuticals or drugs-challenges ahead

There is no doubt that phytochemicals have the potential as pharmaceutical agents or drugs. In the past, several phytochemicals have been used in the medical practice with significant success. With the emergence of points like drug-resistance and cost effectiveness of synthetic drugs, scientists are targeting phytochemicals for developing cheap as well as potent drugs.

- According to experts, export of herbal materials and medicines can shoot up to 10,000 million by 2010 from 4460 million in mid 2003. The international market for herbal remedies is more then US$ 60 billion per year and growing at a rate of 7%. With increased consumer demand for phyto products, the market for phytochemicals is definitely promising. Herbal drug industry has witnessed the emergence of subjects like phytopharmacovigilance. The subject deals with the safety index of herbal drugs. It is defined as “the systematic research of the safety of herbal medicines”.

- The main challenges in treating phytochemicals as drugs are discussed below:
A. Herbal/phytochemical-drug interactions

Due to the revised interest in herbal medicine, people are favoring nutraceuticals and botanical supplements. As the same time several companies have introduced designed or pharma foods in the market. These are a rich source of phytochemicals having antioxidant, anti-aging and chemo protective effects. Recent studies have reported that phytomedicines have a modulatory effect on drug-metabolizing enzymes, (particularly cytochrome 450) leading to potential drug interactions. Phytochemicals have the tendency to elevate as well as suppress the cytochrome 450 system.

Sales of over-the-counter (OTC) products in 1998 soared to US$46.6 billion, with pharmacies capturing approximately 33%, or US$15.4 billion of the sales. Likewise, the sale of herbal supplements rose to approximately US$5 billion in 2000. Pharmacists routinely advise patients on the use of OTC medicines, and with an increased use of herbal medicines among patients, knowledge of appropriate potential interactions between pharmaceutical drugs, including OTC medications, and herbal supplements is becoming increasingly important.

Some of the best-selling herbal supplements are ginkgo (Ginkgo biloba, used for increasing peripheral blood flow and in senile dementia), Asian/Korean ginseng (Panax ginseng, used as an ‘adaptogen’ to help regulate the body’s reaction to various stresses), garlic (Allium sativum), used for cardiovascular health including hypercholesterolemia), echinacea (Echinacea purpurea/angustifolia), used to support the immune system, especially in the prevention and treatment of colds and influenza), St. John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum), used in the management of mild to moderate depression), and saw palmetto (Serenoa repens), used in the management of benign prostatic hyperplasia (Fig. 6.18). Despite the widespread concurrent use of conventional medicines and herbal supplements, documented herb–drug interactions (HDIs) are still sparse and consist mainly of isolated case reports and laboratory studies. For most potential interactions of herbs and drugs that are reported, the theories are based on very high doses of isolated phytochemicals in laboratory models, or conclusions are drawn from similarities in the pharmacology of constituents in the herb and a particular drug. A customer may say, “Herbs have been used safely for thousands of years.” While this may be true, the people using those herbs were not on several medications at the same time (Fig. 6.19).

Below is a reference chart listing potential Herb–OTC interactions. Pharmacists should be always aware of the documented or potential interactions between herbal supplements and prescription drugs. Potential interactions are classified by one of the 3 numerals, according to the following key: 1 = Use of these supplements with the listed OTC category may have health benefits. 2 = Recommend caution to individuals taking these herbal supplements in connection with the corresponding OTC
Fig. 6.18 Best selling herbs in US market in 1998.

*Color image of this figure appears in the color plate section at the end of the book.*

Fig. 6.19 Consumer perception of benefits of herbs.

*Color image of this figure appears in the color plate section at the end of the book.*
categories. Do not recommend using these herbal supplements with listed OTC categories unless the patient is under the direct supervision of a healthcare professional.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OTC Drug Category</th>
<th>Herbal Category</th>
<th>Interaction Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acetaminophen</td>
<td>Milk thistle (<em>Silybum marianum</em>)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Picrorrhiza (<em>Picrorrhiza kurroa</em>)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schisandra (<em>Schisandra chinensis</em>)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antihistamines</td>
<td>Belladonna (<em>Atropa belladonna</em>)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bittersweet (<em>Solanum dulcamara</em>)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Henbane (<em>Hyoscyamus niger</em>)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hops (<em>Humulus lupulus</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jimson weed (<em>Datura stramonium</em>)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kava kava (<em>Piper methysticum</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passionflower (<em>Passiflora incarnata</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stinging nettle leaf (<em>Urtica dioica</em>)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Valerian (<em>Valeriana officinalis</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Bilberry (<em>Vaccinium myrtillus</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cat’s claw (<em>Uncaria tomentosa</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coleus (<em>Coleus forskohlii</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cordyceps (<em>Cordyceps sinensis</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dong quai (<em>Angelica sinensis</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evening primrose oil (<em>Oenothera biennis</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feverfew (<em>Tanacetum parthenium</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Garlic (<em>Allium sativum</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginger (<em>Zingiber officinale</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginkgo (<em>Ginkgo biloba</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginseng, Asian/Korean (<em>Panax ginseng</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grape seed (<em>Vitis vinifera</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Green tea (<em>Camellia sinensis</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Horse chestnut (<em>Aesculus hippocastanum</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reishi mushroom (<em>Ganoderma lucidum</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>St. John’s wort (<em>Hypericum perforatum</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decongestants</td>
<td>Bitter orange (<em>Citrus aurantium</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cayenne (<em>Capsicum annuum</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coffee (<em>Coffee arabica</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ginseng, Asian/Korean (<em>Panax ginseng</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guarana (<em>Paulinia cupana</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ma huang (<em>Ephedra sinica</em>)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Muira puama (<em>Ptychopetalum sp.</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Night-blooming cactus (<em>Selenicereus grandiflorus</em>)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chart 6.1 contd...
Hypericin and hyperforin

As an herbal remedy, Hypericum perforatum has not been subjected to the rigorous clinical testing of modern drug candidates. Several recent reports provide evidence that St. John’s wort promotes the metabolism of coadministered drugs, including the HIV protease inhibitor indinavir, the immunosuppressant cyclosporin, and oral contraceptives. Because each of these drugs is metabolized by cytochrome P450 (CYP) 3A4, a monooxygenase involved in the metabolism of many xenobiotics, these findings suggested that St. John’s wort might induce CYP3A4 expression. Transcription of CYP3A4 is known to be induced by a range of xenobiotics, including drugs such as the antibiotic rifampicin, the antimycotic clotrimazole, the insulininsensitizer troglitazone, and the barbiturate phenobarbital.
Hyperforin and *H. perforatum* extracts induce CYP3A4 in hepatocyte cells via the pregnane X nuclear receptor which controls CYP3A4 expression. The crude extracts of *H. perforatum* inhibit CYP2C9, CYP2C19, CYP2D6 and CYP3A4. The extracts were further fractioned and each fraction was tested for inhibitory action on the cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzyme activities.

Hyperforin, amentoflavone, hypericin, quercetin and chlorogenic acid, all demonstrated inhibitory affect on cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzyme activities. Amentoflavone was shown to be potent inhibitor of CYP3A4, CYP1A2 and CYP2C9. Hyperforin was shown as potent non-competitive inhibitor of CYP2C9, CYP2D6 and CYP3A4. Hypericin also demonstrated inhibitory activity. The author concluded that *H. perforatum* extracts contains compounds that have potent inhibitory activity on major drug metabolizing enzymes.

A study investigated the effect of *H. perforatum* on cytochrome CYP2D6 and CYP3A4. Seven healthy volunteers were orally administered alprazolam and dextromethorphan along with *H. perforatum*. Urinary concentrations of alprazolam and dextromethorphan and dextromethorphan metabolic ratios were determined. The authors concluded no significant difference in pharmacokinetic profile of alprazolam or dextromethorphan metabolic ratios.

In a human study, 13 healthy volunteers were given 300 mg standardized extract *H. perforatum* TID for 14 d. 24 h urinary excretion ratios of 6-beta hydroxycortisol / cortisol were used as an index of CYP3A4 activity. A significant increase, from zero up to around 2.5x over base was found in urinary ratios in 12 subjects, suggestive of 3A4 induction.

According to a study, researchers were able to determine the structure of a significant molecule (PXR) present in the liver and responsible for the metabolism of a majority of the drugs consumed by humans. The molecule is a regulator of the protein known as P450-3A, which is responsible for breaking the drugs. Recently interactions of *H. perforatum* have been suggested with oral contraceptives, antivirals and transplant drugs.

A study reported that hyperforin contributes to the hepatic CYP3A-inducing effect of *H. perforatum* extract in the mouse. A hydro alcoholic extract containing 4.5% hyperforin was given at a dose of 300 mg/kg b.i.d. for 4 and 12 d. Hyperforin, its main phloroglucinol component, was given as dicyclohexylammonium salt (18.1 mg/kg, b.i.d.) on the basis of its content in the extract, to ensure comparable exposure to hyperforin. The extract increased hepatic erythromycin-N-demethylase activity, which is cytochrome P450 enzyme (CYP) 3A-dependent, about 2.2-fold after 4 d of dosing, with only slightly greater effect after 12 d (2.8 times controls).

Hyperforin too increased erythromycin-N-demethylase activity within 4 d to much the same extent as the extract (1.8 times the activity
of controls), suggesting that it behaves qualitatively and quantitatively like the extract as regards induction of CYP3A activity. This effect was confirmed by Western blot analysis of hepatic CYP3A expression. Exposure to hyperforin at the end of the four days’ treatment was still similar to that with extract of *H. perforatum*, although it was variable and lower than after the first dose in both cases, further suggesting that hyperforin plays a key role in CYP3A induction by the extract of *H. perforatum* in the mouse.

In a subsequent study, it was shown that hyperforin induces the expression of numerous drug metabolism and excretion genes in primary human hepatocytes. The researchers determined the crystal structure of hyperforin in complex with the ligand binding domain of human PXR. Hyperforin induces conformational changes in PXR’s ligand binding pocket relative to structures of human PXR elucidated previously and increases the size of the pocket by 250 Å. It was found that the mutation of individual aromatic residues within the ligand binding cavity changes PXR’s response to particular ligands. Taken together, these results demonstrate that PXR employs structural flexibility to expand the chemical space it samples and that the mutation of specific residues within the ligand binding pocket of PXR tunes the receptor’s response to ligands.

Recently it has been reported that *H. perforatum* can reduce the efficacy of chemotherapy drug known as irinotecan. The study was based on previous findings that *H. perforatum* can stimulate cytochrome P450 (CYP3A4), an enzyme system involved in drug metabolism. Specifically, researchers took the premise that hypericin and hyperforin-components of *H. perforatum* seem to enhance CYP3A4 activity and the fact that irinotecan is also partly metabolized by the enzyme system (see Fig. 6.20).

**Fig. 6.20** The effect of hyperforin on irinotecan therapy.

*Source:* Adapted with permission from Meijerman et al., Oncologist 2006.
Hyperforin, binds to and activates X receptor (PXR). Upon activation, PXR forms a heterodimer with the 9-cis retinoic acid receptor (RXR), and this complex binds to the xenobiotic response elements (PXRE) in the CYP3A4 gene. The transcription of the gene is increased, and more CYP3A4 is formed, thereby increasing the metabolism of irinotecan into an inactive metabolite, oxidized irinotecan. The amount of irinotecan left to be metabolized into SN-38 decreases, leaving less active SN-38 and lower therapeutic efficacy of irinotecan.

**Guggulsterones (Fig. 5.205)**

The molecular basis for the lipid-lowering action of guggulsterones has been suggested to be an antagonism of the farnesoid X receptor, a member of the nuclear receptor super family of ligand-activated transcription factors. Guggulsterones activate the estrogen receptor, progesterone receptor, and pregnane X receptor with EC\textsubscript{50} values in low micromolar range. Guggulsterone-mediated activation of pregnane X receptor induces the expression of CYP3A genes both in rodent and human hepatocytes. Pregnan X receptor activation is known to cause herb-drug interactions and it has been suggested that guggulipid therapy should be used cautiously in patients taking prescription medications that are metabolized by the CYP3A family members.

**Forskolin (Fig. 5.244)**

It is an active ingredient in *Coleus forskohlii* extract. Recent findings have suggested that forskolin and its nonadenyl cyclase-activating analog 1, 9 dideoxyforskolin induce CYP3A gene expression in primary hepatocytes by functioning as agonists of the pregnane X receptor. Activation of the protein kinase-A signaling potentiates pregnane X receptor-mediated induction of CYP3A gene expression in cultured hepatocytes and increases the strength of pregnane X receptor-coactivator protein-protein interaction in cell-based assays.

**B. Adverse drug interactions**

The use of complementary and adjunctive therapy has been steadily increasing in the U.S. since the 1960s. This can be attributed to several factors, in particular to over 80 million ‘baby boomers’ embracing alternative medicine as a way to enhance their medical care. The perceived coldness and remoteness of conventional medicine; the entanglement of managed care in red tape; continued emphasis on ‘natural’ which supposedly connotes ‘better’, as well as the popularity of vegetarian practices have also contributed to the general population’s increasing involvement with alternative medicine. In 1999, 40% of Americans sought alternative medical treatment, outpacing visits to conventional primary care physicians.
Till date, there is scarce or very limited data for adverse drug reaction profile of phytochemicals. This may be attributed to lack of clinical trials with phytochemicals. In phytomedicine, most of the clinical studies have been conducted with herbal extracts standardized to a certain quantity of phytochemical rather than purified phytochemicals.

According to Edwards, World Health Organization Adverse Drug Reaction (WHO ADR) has documented 3.6 million adverse drug reactions. Of these, 41,439 are directly or indirectly related to phytodrugs. It should be noted that most of the adverse drug reactions related to phytodrugs are those of crude preparations or extracts and not of phytochemicals.

Let us concentrate on nephrotoxicity of herbs (see Tables 1.1 and 1.2). The consensus of many renal clinicians is that medicinal herbal use, with its known potent pharmacological activity, chemical components (some unknown), microbial content, and ability to interfere with medications, is rendered dangerous and even unadvisable for the renal patient. Herbal preparation-induced acute renal necrosis and chronic renal failure belie the assumed innocuous nature of these preparations. Substantial morbidities such as chronic renal failure, dialysis, or renal transplant and even death have been seen with herbal products. Since these herbal preparations are not single chemical entities, no activity of toxic component can be subjected to standardized tests of efficacy and safety.

Table 6.4 The five best-selling herbs in the U.S.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>St. John’s Wort (Hypericum perforatum)</td>
<td>Anxiety/ Depression- For mild to moderate depression only</td>
<td>Yes- Not recommended in renal pts.</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Interacts with many drugs- transplant rejection drugs, Not to be taken in pregnancy or with psychoactive Drug/SSRIs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea</td>
<td>prevent or improve symptoms of respiratory tract infections</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Do not take for more than 6 wk. Could worsen autoimmune disease. Type 1 Diabetes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garlic (Allium sativum L)</td>
<td>Cardiac/ Cholesterol To decrease serum cholesterol and Triglycerides</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Effective dose is large; 1-4 cloves Suggest enteric coated Side effects: halitosis, gastritis; diaphoresis, light-headedness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginseng (Panax Ginseng)</td>
<td>Multiple Categories, supposed uses: stress, hypertension, depression, and impaired memory</td>
<td>A matter of debate-Not recommended</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Side effects: anxiety, hypertension, insomnia, headaches, and asthma attacks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gingko (Ginkgo biloba)</td>
<td>Memory/Concentration-for elderly with Alzheimer’s dementia</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes - antagonistic effect on platelet activating factor role in Immune—mediated renal disease</td>
<td>Side effects: Occasional headache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Cohash (Cimicifuga racemosa L)</td>
<td>Health-Menopausal symptoms/PMS</td>
<td>(Questionable)</td>
<td>(Questionable)</td>
<td>Perspiration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saw palmetto (Serenoa repens)</td>
<td>Men’s Health</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes, Clinical evidence getting stronger</td>
<td>High doses headache, diarrhea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ma-huang (Ephedra sp.)</td>
<td>Weight Loss, Anorectic, Bronchodilator, Hypertensive crisis, CVA; arrhythmias, death</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes, but potentially lethal even in young healthy.</td>
<td>Hypertensive crisis; CVA; arrhythmias, death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feverfew (Tanacetum parthenium)</td>
<td>Headaches Vascular migraines</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>May cause mouth ulcers; increased heart rate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerian (Valeriana officinalis L.)</td>
<td>Insomnia</td>
<td>Yes-considered safe until cardiac withdrawal syndrome documented</td>
<td>Yes-generally recognized as safe</td>
<td>Headache, excitability, uneasiness, cardiac disturbances.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C. Phytochemical variability in commercial samples Example of withaferin-A**

Sangwan et al., 2004 reported the variability of withaferin-A (Fig. 5.249, Chapter 5) in commercial preparations of Ashwagandha (*Withania somnifera*). Commercial samples consisting of 250 mg Ashwagandha (as indicated on the label) were investigated for their phytochemical contents. The samples were quantified by High Performance Liquid Chromatography. The amount of withaferin-A estimated in commercial samples is given in Table 5.6. There was significant variation in relative amount of withaferin A. The study reflected a 117-fold higher concentration of withaferin A in the highest (product 1) holding product compared to one with the least (product 10). Further, according to the recommended intake of the product as mentioned on the label, the dose of withaferin A ranged from 0.02 mg to 1.4 mg.

Table 6.6 Withaferin A in selected commercial mono and poly herbal Ashwagandha products.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>Withaferin A (mg g⁻¹ of Ashwagandha*)</th>
<th>Percentage of maximum in the sample</th>
<th>Withaferin A (mg) per suggested daily dose**</th>
<th>Dose multiplicity factor for Withaferin A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#001</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#002</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#003</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>39.7</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#004</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>0.50-1.00</td>
<td>25-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#005</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>0.86-1.72</td>
<td>43-86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#006</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>0.08-0.16</td>
<td>4.0-8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#007</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#008</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#009</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#010</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
<td>n.a.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Ashwagandha state (herb or herb extract) as specified on the product.

**Daily dose (load) of withaferin A computed from its concentration in the product and suggested intake of product n.a. Not available/applicable.

Source: Adapted with permission from Sangwan et al., Current Science 2004.

The commercial samples were further studied for the relative amount of six phytochemicals (WS-1 and WS-6). Data in Table 5.7 suggests wider variation with regard to amount of WS-1 to WS-6. The example of withaferin-A clearly suggests significant variation in the amount of active constituents in the commercial herbal products.
Table 6.7 Content of unidentified Ashwagandha-specific phytochemicals in selected commercial mono and poly-herbal products.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Products</th>
<th>WS-1 (8.9 min)</th>
<th>WS-2 (25.4 min)</th>
<th>WS-3 (25.7 min)</th>
<th>WS-4 (27.6 min)</th>
<th>WS-5 (29.3 min)</th>
<th>WS-6 (45.1 min)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#001</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#002</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#003</td>
<td>3.10</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#004</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#005</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#006</td>
<td>9.18</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#007</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#008</td>
<td>27.8</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#009</td>
<td>4.94</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
<td>n.d.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Ashwagandha state (herb or herb extract) as specified on the product n.d., not detected. Indications in parentheses are according to HPLC retention times of the phytochemicals under the condition of the analysis.

*Source:* Adapted with permission from Sangwan et al., Current Science 2004.

### Example of allicin

The data deals with the evaluation of allicin (Fig. 5.270, Chapter 5): levels in Australian grown garlic. A total of 200 garlic samples were collected from 43 producers in the Australian states of Victoria, Tasmania, Queensland, New South Wales and South Australia. The 200 samples tested recorded allicin yields in the range 0.5 to 9.0 mg/g (by fresh weight) with the majority of samples in the 3.0 to 6.0 mg/g range (Fig. 6.21).

![Fig. 6.21 Frequency distribution of allicin levels in 200 garlic samples.](color_plate)

*Source:* Adapted with permission from Rural Industries Research and Development Corporation, Victoria.

Color image of this figure appears in the color plate section at the end of the book.
Commercial interests determined that an allicin level of 4.5 mg/g (by fresh weight) was required for extraction to be economically viable. Almost 50% (95 out of 200) of the samples assayed had allicin yields over 4.5 mg/g, (i.e., ‘pharmaceutical grade’) and a further 10% of the samples were in the 4.0–4.5 mg/g range.

As a comparison to allicin levels previously cited in scientific literature, the highest previously recorded allicin level was 7.7 mg/g (by fresh weight) for Romanian Red garlic grown in New York, USA (Table 1.1). Six samples of the Australian grown garlic tested in the current study recorded allicin yields higher than 7.7 mg/g. The next highest allicin yield recorded prior to this study was 6.7 mg/g for Spanish Roja grown in the USA and 6.6 mg/g for Laotouxx garlic obtained from China. Fifteen Australian grown samples from the current study exceeded this level and a number of these samples are listed in Table 5.22.

### Table 6.8 Allicin levels (from fresh garlic samples) recorded in Australia and other countries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country of origin</th>
<th>Allicin mg/g FW</th>
<th>Country of origin</th>
<th>Allicin mg/g FW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>USA*</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>USA*</td>
<td>6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>China^</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>China^</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>China^</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Japan@</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Japan@</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>Japan@</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#From (7) Ziegler and Sticher, 1989.
*From (5) Koch and Lawson, 1996.
^From (6) Lawson, Wood and Hughes, 1991.
@From (8) Ueda et al., 1991.

### D. Toxicology of phytochemicals

This is another gray area where preliminary investigations are to be carried out. LD$_{50}$ of some known specialty phytochemicals are tabulated below:
Table 6.9 Medial lethal dose of some well-known phytochemicals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Phytochemical</th>
<th>LD₅₀</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Abrin</td>
<td>0.0004 mg/kg (oral in mouse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Arecoline</td>
<td>100 mg/kg (s.c. in mouse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>192 mg/kg (oral in man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Chavicol</td>
<td>1230 mg/kg (oral in rat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Eugenol</td>
<td>1930 mg/kg (oral in mouse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Harmaline</td>
<td>120 mg/kg (s.c. in rat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Harmine</td>
<td>200 mg/kg (i.v. in mouse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Lobeline</td>
<td>40 mg/kg (ipr in mouse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Mescaline</td>
<td>132 mg/kg (oral in man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Nicotine</td>
<td>30 mg/kg (oral in man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Pyridine</td>
<td>891 mg/kg (oral in rat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Quinine</td>
<td>294 mg/kg (oral in man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Rotenone</td>
<td>143 mg/kg (oral in man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Tubocurarine</td>
<td>28 mg/kg (oral in rat)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Duke 1998.

E. Cost-effectiveness of isolation methods

Cost-effectiveness of isolation methods of phytochemicals is an important factor in determining the future of phytomedicine. Isolating bioactive compounds is very expensive and complicated. Further a lack of public awareness about health benefits of phytomedicine and phytochemicals is another obstacle.

Conclusion

According to one estimate, only 20% of the plant flora has been screened for drugs. Keeping in view the vast treasure of medicinal herbs, one can expect phytochemicals to play a significant role as modern medical science has limited options for diseases like diabetes mellitus, rheumatoid arthritis, Alzheimer’s disease and Parkinson’s disease. Work on the identification and isolation of phytochemicals is an ongoing process and phytomedicine is expected to play a critical role in the future of the healthcare system.

References and further reading


The Science Advisory Board 2005, Experts Insights from gene to drugs. Arlington, VA 22201


Chapter 7

Therapeutic Utility of Ayurveda

7.1 Introduction

Ayurveda is considered to be the mother of all systems of healing. It is defined as a science of life and teaches us what is harmful and what is useful for health. The subject of Ayurveda is divided into eight distinct branches ranging from medicine to geriatrics. For diagnosing diseases, Ayurveda has its own concept like pulse examination, eye and urine diagnosis. Treatment is based on drugs of herbs, minerals and animal origin. Ayurvedic pharmacy is a vast subject and drugs are formulated as powder, decoction, infusion and fluid extract.

Recent trends have suggested the global acceptance of Ayurveda as a science. Various studies have reported increased patient visits to alternative health care practitioners. World Health Organization (WHO) has also recognized certain alternative systems of healing. Ayurvedic medicinal plants are in high demand and some of these (established in Ayurvedic Pharmacopoeia) have been screened for pre-clinical studies. *Asparagus racemosus* (shatavari), *Terminalia arjuna* (arjuna), *Terminalia chebula* (haritaki), *Tinospora cordifolia* (guduchi) and *Withania somnifera* (ashwagandha) have been identified as plants of good therapeutic potential.

However there are concerns over the quality of drugs used in Ayurveda. While the process of procurement of the raw material to the finished product appears to be easy, it is not a simple job. The biggest drawback is lack of agricultural and testing standards. These have an ultimate impact on quality control and efficacy of herbal formulations. Recently the Ayurvedic drug market faced a ban on the sale of certain herbo-mineral formulations in the US market.

7.2 Quality standards and Ayurveda

Ayurveda has survived as a science since centuries. Ayurveda was preached by distinguished personalities like Charaka, Sushruta, Madhva
and Kashyapa. These people established the fundamental aspects of the science which are still valid today. Later scholars like Vagabhotta, Chakrapani, Arundutta, and Dalhana did a commendable job in preserving this ancient wisdom. Before screening a medicine from the Ayurvedic point of view, the following parameters are observed:

1. Substance (Dravya).
2. Taste (Rasa).
3. Property (Guna).
4. Potency (Virya).
5. Post-digestion effect (Vipaka).
6. Therapeutics (Prabhva).
7. Pharmacological activity (Karma).

Since Ayurveda has served humanity for centuries, it is but obvious that without internal quality standards it was not possible for the system to survive. Lack of documentation of ancient medical knowledge seems to be the limiting factor for Ayurveda. Oral transmission was the major tool for transferring theoretical as well as practical knowledge. However after 17th century the scholars felt the need of documentation and several ‘Nighantu’ were written. Nighantu is the Sanskrit word equivalent to Materia Medica (medicinal botany or pharmacognosy).

Just like all health systems, the concept of standardization exists in Ayurveda. Charaka, the great Indian physician, has described methods for collection of plant parts in appropriate seasons. In Ayurveda or other herbal systems of medicine, various plant parts ranging from roots to bark are used in formulations. The theme about collecting plant parts in the appropriate season is related to the presence of the active principle—the curative factor of herbal remedies. Today we have isolated the active principles of the plants and given them names like alkaloids and glycosides. The ancient scholars were well aware of the active principles of plant-based remedies. They described it in terms of virya (potency).

Ayurvedic pharmacy is a highly developed subject. The herbs are processed into various pharmacopoeial preparations like infusions, decoctions, powders, expressed juice and extracts. Herbs are taken in a specific ratio and subjected to various methods like incineration, distillation or extraction. Although these methods apparently seem to be crude but keeping in mind the lack of scientific instruments in the Vedic era it can definitely be said that the science was at its peak. Doses of all the pharmacopoeial preparations and the mode of administration are been well defined in Ayurvedic texts.

When we study the nomenclature of medicinal plants from the Ayurvedic point of view, it can be said that names were assigned on anatomical or physiological basis. Brahami is classical example of this.
The leaf of the plant has a similarity to cerebral hemispheres of the human brain. It may be the basis of extensive use of Brahami in the treatment of brain related diseases. The name of Ashwagandha has been derived from the smell of the root which resembles that of a horse feces. Due to lack of development of subjects like taxonomy the ancient scholars devised names mostly on an organo-leptic basis.

Ayurvedic drugs have given the scientific community a lead to discover molecules from plants. *Cassia tora* (Chakrmurda) is widely used in the treatment of ringworm in Ayurveda. As the name suggests the plant is useful in the treatment of skin disease with round margins. It was on this lead that chrysophanic acid was isolated from this plant. Earlier when standard antipsoriatic medications were not available, chrysophanic acid was the main stay of antipsoriatic treatment. This is not the only case as many plants provide us with lead molecules for respective segments based on description (irrespective of the objective or subjective factor) in ancient texts. On the whole it can be said that quality standards do exist in Ayurveda. Due to a lack of laboratory facilities and proper clinical documentation these standards were never fully developed.

### 7.3 Controversial Medicinal Plant Identification in Ayurveda

Proper identification of medicinal plants has a significant impact on the finished product and therapeutics. In Ayurveda identification of medicinal plants is a major hurdle in laying pharmacopeial standards for formulations. Astavarga (a group of eight medicinal plants; see Table 5.24) is vital part of Ayurvedic formulations like Chyvanprasha and four plants viz, Riddhi, Vriddhi, Jivaka and Rishbhaka have been discussed as possible members of the family Orchidaceae. Although work has been done on identification of medicinal plants mentioned under Astavarga, much remains to be done to identify the true representatives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Ayurvedic name</th>
<th>Botanical name</th>
<th>Family</th>
<th>Part used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Jivaka*</td>
<td><em>Malaxis muscifera</em> (Lindl.) Kuntze</td>
<td>Orchidaceae</td>
<td>Bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Rishbhaka*</td>
<td><em>Malaxis acuminata</em> D.Don</td>
<td>Orchidaceae</td>
<td>Pseudo-bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Meda</td>
<td><em>Polygonatum verticillatum</em> (L.) All.</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Mahameda</td>
<td><em>Polygonatum cirrhifolium</em> (Wall.) Royle</td>
<td>Polygonaceae</td>
<td>Rhizome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.1 contd...
In Ayurveda pasanbheda is a drug of controversial origin. The plant is widely used in the treatment of kidney ailments particularly kidney stones. Various medicinal plants are used as pasanbheda in different parts of India (see Table 5.25).

Table 7.2 It shows possible representatives of pasanbheda, an Ayurvedic drug of controversial origin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$\text{S.no}$</th>
<th>Botanical name</th>
<th>Natural order</th>
<th>Parts used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td><em>Aerva lanata</em> Juss.ex Schult.</td>
<td>Amaranthaceae</td>
<td>Roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><em>Bergenia ligulata</em> (Wall.) Engl.</td>
<td>Saxifragaceae</td>
<td>Seeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><em>Bridelia crenulata</em> L.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td>Stem bark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><em>Bryophyllum calycinum</em> Salisb.</td>
<td>Crassulaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><em>Coleus amboinicus</em> Lour.</td>
<td>Lamiaceae</td>
<td>Leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td><em>Decalepis arayalpatra</em> Joseph &amp; Chandrasekharan</td>
<td>Periplocaceae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td><em>Didymocarpus pedicellata</em> R.Br.</td>
<td>Gesneriaceae</td>
<td>Whole plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td><em>Homonoia riporia</em> Lour.</td>
<td>Euphorbiaceae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further work on proper botanical identification of pasanbheda is warranted. In the Indian market several commercial lithontriptic preparations are sold for dissolving kidney stones. Some formulations utilize *Bergenia ligulata* while others *Bryophyllum calycinum*. The situation is quite confusing for practicing physicians. Further work on proper botanical identification of pasanbheda is warranted.

Studies done on plants like *Cratavea nurvala* (varun) have shown that the active constituents of the plant including lupeol possess significant antiurolithiatic activity in animal models. Most of the companies marketing herbal products are dependent on animal findings. Clinical data is very limited with Ayurvedic drugs. In the studies that have been done, the pattern remains objectionable or inconclusive. In case of pasanbheda, studies similar to that of *Cratavea nurvala* should be done for all representatives (mentioned in Table 1.2) so as to understand the mode of action and justify the rationale use of the drug. Botanical identity is of prime importance while creating a formulation.
The list is endless. In the subsequent table we have listed some controversial drugs used in Ayurveda for the benefit of potential readers.

Table 7.3 It Shows Some of the Controversial Medicinal Plant Used in Ayurveda.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Ayurvedic name</th>
<th>Current representative</th>
<th>Possible representatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Adhoguda</td>
<td>Euphorbia nivulia Buch.-Ham.</td>
<td>Euphorbia acaulis Roxb., Argyeria petaloides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Agnigurbha</td>
<td>Solanum trilobatum L.</td>
<td>Solanum xanthocarpum Schrad et Wendl., Artemisia vulgaris Willd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Agnimanta</td>
<td>Premna integrifolia L.</td>
<td>Clerodendron phlomidis L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ajagandha</td>
<td>Gynandropis gynandra L. Briq.</td>
<td>Clemone viscosa L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Alambusa</td>
<td>Sphaeranthus indicus L.</td>
<td>Mimos pudica L., Biophytyum sensitivum R.Br.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Anarvalli</td>
<td>Cuscuta reflexa Roxb.</td>
<td>Cassopatha filiformis L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Amla vetasa</td>
<td>Garcinia pedunculata Roxb.</td>
<td>Rheum emodi Wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Ansumati</td>
<td>Desmodium gangeticum DC. var. maculatum (L.) DC. (L.) Baker</td>
<td>Uraia picta (Jacq.) L., Pseudarthria viscida (L.) Wight &amp; Arn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Arka</td>
<td>Calotropis gigentia (L.) R. Br. ex Ait.</td>
<td>Calotropis procera R.Br.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Asmantaka</td>
<td>Ficus rumphii Blume</td>
<td>Bauhinia racemosa Lam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Asvaksura</td>
<td>Chitoria ternatea L.</td>
<td>Medicago sativa L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Asoca</td>
<td>Polyalthia longifolia Thw.</td>
<td>Saraca asoca (Roxb.) De Wild.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Bala</td>
<td>Sida cordifolia Linn.</td>
<td>Abutilon indicum G.Don., Grewia hirsuta Vahl., Sida veronicefolia Lam., Sida rhombifolia L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Bharangi</td>
<td>Clerodendron serratum Linn.</td>
<td>Clerodendron siphonanthus (R.Br.) CB Clarke, Gardenia turgida Roxb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Brahmamandli</td>
<td>Tricholepis glaberrima DC.</td>
<td>Echinops echinatus Roxb., Argemone mexicana L., Xanthium strumarium Linn., Voluntarella divaricata C.B. Clarke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Ganda durva</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Gandira</td>
<td>Coleus barbatus (Andrews) Benth.</td>
<td>Anaranthus viridis L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Gojilova</td>
<td>Elephantopus scaber L.</td>
<td>Onosma bracteatum Wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Kakajangha</td>
<td>Periploque bicalculata Nees</td>
<td>Lea aequata L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Kakasana</td>
<td>Pontopappus microphysula W. &amp; A.</td>
<td>Asclepias curassavica L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Karavi</td>
<td>Strobilanthes callosus Nees</td>
<td>Carum carvi L.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Matsyaksi</td>
<td>Alternanthera sessilis R. Br. ex DC.</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
256  Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Ayurvedic name</th>
<th>Current representative</th>
<th>Possible representatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Mahamundi</td>
<td>Sphaeranthus africans L.</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Murta</td>
<td>Marsdenia tenacissina W.&amp; A.</td>
<td>Chlamydebona macrophylla G.Don, Clematis triloba Heyne ex Roth, Sansevieria roxburghiana Schult.f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Parpata</td>
<td>Fumaria vaillanti Loisel</td>
<td>Oldelandia corymbosa L., Rungia repens Nees, Mollugo oppositifolia L., Polycarpaea corymbosa (L.) Lamark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Pitachandana</td>
<td>Jateorhiza palmata Miers</td>
<td>Coscinium fenestrum (Gaertn) Coleb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Kohitaka</td>
<td>Aphananthes polystachya (Wall.) R. N. Parker</td>
<td>Tecoma undulata (Sm.) G. Don</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Soma</td>
<td>Ephedra gerardiana Wall.</td>
<td>Periploca aphylla Decne. var. laxiflora Bornm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Sprkka</td>
<td>Melilotus officinalis</td>
<td>Anisomeles malabarica (L.) R.Br.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Tivariya</td>
<td>Asonoea officinalis L.</td>
<td>Hydnocarpus wightiana Blume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Tryantika</td>
<td>Delphinium zali Aitch. &amp; Hemsl.</td>
<td>Gentiana kurroa Royce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Uddalaka</td>
<td>Paspalum scrobiculatum L.</td>
<td>Bauhinia variegata L.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.4 Pre-clinical research on medicinal plants used in Ayurveda

In Ayurvedic Materia Medica approximately 800 medicinal plants are actively used in creating formulations. Some of the plants are used as single entity in the form of powder, tablet or extract. There is a clear cut description that certain plants should not be subjected to decoction or infusion as it essentially kills the active principle or constituent. Modern studies have proved that if alkaloid containing drugs are subjected to heat at 60°C, they undergo hydrolysis and get converted into isomeride (a compound having the same kind of atoms but with different stereochemistry). In this case it appears to be coherence between traditional and modern view.

The majority of medicinal plants used in Ayurveda have been subjected to phytochemical screening and active principles have been identified. Further pre-clinical (pharmacological investigations) have justified the traditional medical claims of Ayurveda. In the subsequent table we have tried to document pre-clinical research on medicinal plants used in Ayurveda with respect to bioactive constituents.
### Table 7.4 Pre-clinical research on medicinal plants used in Ayurveda.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Medicinal Plant</th>
<th>Bioactives</th>
<th>Pre-clinical activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td><em>Aegle marmelos</em> Correa</td>
<td>Pyranocoumarin: luvangetin</td>
<td>Gastro-protective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><em>Andrographis paniculata</em> Nees.</td>
<td>Diterpene: andrographolide</td>
<td>Chloretic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><em>Bacopa monniera</em> L.</td>
<td>Triterpenoid saponins: Bacoside-A and B</td>
<td>Nootropic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><em>Boswellia serrata</em></td>
<td>Boswellic acids</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><em>Butea monosperma</em> L.</td>
<td>Tropolone: pahasonin</td>
<td>Anthelmintic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td><em>Commiphora mukul</em></td>
<td>Sesquiterpene ketone: guggulsterones</td>
<td>Hypolipidemic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td><em>Crataeva nurvala</em> Buch.-Ham.</td>
<td>Flavonoid: lupeol</td>
<td>Nephroprotective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td><em>Desmodium gangeticum</em></td>
<td>Pterocarpeneoid: gangetin</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td><em>Eclipta alba</em> L.</td>
<td>Apigenin, 4-hydroxybenzoic acid and protocatechueic acid</td>
<td>Hepatoprotective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td><em>Glycyrrhiza glabra</em> L.</td>
<td>Triterpenoid sapoin: glycyrrhizin</td>
<td>Antiviral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td><em>Nardostachys jatamansi</em> DC</td>
<td>Sesquiterpene ketone: jatamansone</td>
<td>Antiarrhythmic, anticonvulsant and tranquillizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td><em>Nelumbo nucifera</em> L.</td>
<td>Triterpene: ursolic acid</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td><em>Picrorhiza kurrooa</em> ex Benth.</td>
<td>Kutkins</td>
<td>Hepatoprotective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td><em>Piper nigrum</em> L.</td>
<td>Alkaloid: piperine</td>
<td>Anti-diarrheal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td><em>Plumbago rosea</em> L.</td>
<td>Naphthoquinone-plumbagin</td>
<td>Anticancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td><em>Rabia cordifolia</em></td>
<td>Anthraquinone: rubidianine</td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Swertia chirata</em> - (Wall.) C.B.Clarke.</td>
<td>Secoiridoid glycosides: amarogentin and xanthon: swerchirin</td>
<td>Topoisomerase inhinitier, central nervous system depressant and hypoglycemic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 7.4 contd...*
### Table 7.4 contd...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Medicinal Plant</th>
<th>Bioactives</th>
<th>Pre-clinical activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Terminalia belerica sp.</td>
<td>3, 4, 5-trihydroxy benzoic acid (gallic acid)</td>
<td>Hepatoprotective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Terminalia chebula Retz</td>
<td>Anthraquinone: chebulin</td>
<td>Antispasmodic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Tylophora asthmatica (L. f.) Wight &amp; Arn</td>
<td>Phenanthroindalizidine alkaloid: tylophorine</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory, anti- anaphylactic and anti- spasmodic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Withania somnifera Dunal</td>
<td>Withaferin-A</td>
<td>Anticancer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.5 Clinical research in Ayurveda

Ayurvedic sciences are expected to play a significant role in the future healthcare system. With the onset of research and development activities in Ayurveda and the herbal system of medicine, there is an acute need for conducting clinical trials with traditional drugs. Most of the work reported in literature is based on pre-clinical studies. Some drugs like *Terminalia arjuna* (for hearts ailments) and *Commiphora mukul* (for obesity and arthritis) have been scientifically validated for ancient claims. The need of the hour is documentation of clinical knowledge on herbs available with us. At the same time clinical trials on ancient formulations are also warranted.

In the subsequent table clinical trials on selected medicinal plants used in Ayurveda have been elaborated.

### Table 7.5 Clinical research on medicinal plants used in Ayurveda.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Medicinal Plant</th>
<th>Disease area</th>
<th>Part used/ Preparation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Asparagus officinalis</td>
<td>Duodenal ulcer</td>
<td>Roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Bacopa monniera</td>
<td>Anxiety neurosis and epilepsy</td>
<td>Dried herb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Boswellia serrata</td>
<td>Bronchial asthma and rheumatoid arthritis</td>
<td>Gum-resin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Commiphora mukul</td>
<td>Acne vulgaris, hyperlipidemia, obesity, rheumatoid and arthritis</td>
<td>Gum-resin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Dashmula</td>
<td>Diabetic neuropathy</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Emblica officinalis</td>
<td>Dyspepsia, hyperacidity and hyperlipidemia</td>
<td>Whole part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Eucostemma littorale</td>
<td>Diabetes mellitus type-2</td>
<td>Pills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Mucuna pruriens</td>
<td>Parkinson’s disease</td>
<td>Seed powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Ocimum sanctum</td>
<td>Diabetes mellitus type-2</td>
<td>Leaf-powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Solanum trilobatum</td>
<td>Bronchial asthma</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Solanum xanthocarpum</td>
<td>Bronchial asthma</td>
<td>Leaf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 7.5 contd...*
Table 7.5 contd...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.no</th>
<th>Medicinal Plant</th>
<th>Disease area</th>
<th>Part used/Preparation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Terminalia arjuna</td>
<td>Congestive cardiac failure</td>
<td>Bark powder and bark extract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Tylophora asthmatica</td>
<td>Bronchial asthma</td>
<td>Leaf-powder and alcoholic extract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Withania somnifera</td>
<td>Anxiety neurosis and rheumatoid arthritis</td>
<td>Alcoholic extract</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.6 Future trends

Ayurveda is moving from the fringe to mainstream use with a greater number of people seeking remedies free of the side-effects caused by synthesized chemicals. Alternative systems of medicine have become increasingly popular in recent years. The efficacy of some herbal products is beyond doubt, the most recent examples being *Artemisia annua*, *Silymarin marianum* and *Taxus brevifolia*. Several medicinal plants used in Ayurveda (as discussed in this chapter) are being targeted for possible drug development. The future market belongs to standardized Ayurvedic preparations, which have self explanatory advantages over crude drugs.

Further reading


Therapeutic Utility of Ayurveda


Singh HK, and Dhawan BN. 1982. Effect of Bacopa monniera Linn. (Brahmi) extract on avoidance responses in rat. J. Ethnopharmacol. 5, 205–214.


Chapter 8

Amchi System of Medicine

8.1 Introduction

The Amchi System of medicine (ASM) or Tibetan Medical System (TMS) is one of the practicing systems of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM), also known as Sowa Rigpa (classical Tibetan), which means ‘science of life’. Amchi signifies doctor or physician. Fundamental aspects of the Amchi system of medicine are similar to traditional Indian Medicine (TIM) or Ayurveda.

It is estimated that the Amchi System of medicine is the outcome of aspects of medicine that were transmitted from India to Tibet between the 7th and 12th centuries. ASM however, did not make advances as Traditional Indian Medicine, Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM), Homeopathy and Western Medicinal Herbalism.

8.2 Basic principles

Historically, the amchi would begin their medical training at an early age. Their knowledge and skills have been transferred from teacher to student, often from father to son. Thus, lineages of amchi families exist throughout the Tibetan cultural world. After learning how to read and write classical Tibetan and studying relevant religious texts, students would learn their vocation by apprenticing with an elder amchi and studying the Gyud Shi, or the Four Root Tantra texts of Tibetan medicine. Young amchi would also learn how to identify and collect medicinal plants, make medicine, remove poisonous qualities of certain ingredients, diagnose disease using pulse and urine analysis, and provide prescriptions for patients. They would also be trained in moxibustion, cauterization, and other healing techniques. Likewise, the amchi would receive training in astrology, which is an essential component of diagnosis and treatment within the Tibetan medical tradition.
8.3 Range of drugs used

The present study deals with the Tibetan Medical System and the ingredients used in preparing various ethno medicines to cure several ailments by amchis inhabiting Ladakh and the Lahaul-Spiti region of the Indian trans-Himalaya. A total of 337 plant species, 38 species of animals and six minerals were documented during the survey period. Among 83 amchis interviewed, 36% had disciples or students, primarily their own sons and daughters. The study reflects that the Tibetan system of medicine is declining in the study area due to the shift in socio-economic patterns and unwillingness of the younger generation to adopt amchi as a profession.

Cold deserts are found in the interior of Asia and in the inter mountain zone of North America. In India, cold desert comes under the trans-Himalayan zones, which are confined to Ladakh in Jammu and Kashmir, Lahaul and Spiti in Himachal Pradesh. The Indian cold desert flora is dominated by a few dwarf bushes. Like other parts of the Himalayas, these areas are considered as a treasure of medicinal plants. Keeping in view the above, the Field Research Laboratory (FRL) DRDO carried out extensive ethno-medico-botanical surveys of different parts of the Indian cold desert and has collected 425 plant species, which are used by amchis (herbal doctor) for various ailments. The local tribals have a strong belief in the amchi system of medicine. The important medicinal taxa are *Podophyllum hexandrum*, *Aconitum heterophyllum*, *Saussurea obvallata*, *Gentiana aligida*, *Artemisia sp.*, *Oxytropis microphylla*, and *Cremanthodium ellisii*.

Detailed phytochemical and pharmacological studies are required for positive exploitation and wider application of these Amchi-medico-taxa. The majority of medicinal flora of the Indian cold desert are rare, endangered and threatened due to unscientific exploitation, overgrazing, uprooting for fuel and natural disasters. Therefore, there is a need to conserve the rare and precious cold desert medicinal plants by opening nature reserves and botanical gardens and by developing practices to popularize their commercial cultivation.

Amchis may also create confidential mixtures of medicines for a patient. This confidentiality was maintained and no data regarding those mixtures were recorded. When permission was granted, the plants species has been indicated (for example with the confidential nature of the mixture noted). Many plant species are used by amchis to treat a broad range of ailments, while some plant species are found to treat only one ailment. For example, *Allium oreoprasum*, *Aster diplostephioides*, and *Neopicrorhiza scrophulariiflora* treat a broad range of ailments, while *Maharanga bicolor*, *Maharanga emodi*, etc. are used to treat only one ailment (ear pain). In total, 91 medicinal plants were found to be used to
treat 93 ailments. The most commonly treated ailments include gastritis, cough and cold, edema, stomachache, diarrhea, dysentery, jaundice, rheumatism, and numbness of limbs.

### 8.4 Major medical plants used in amchi system of medicine

*Cicerbita macrorhiza (Royle) P Beauv (Asteraceae)*
The plant is used as febrifuge.

*Rubus foliolosus (Rubiaceae)*
It is given in fever, dyspepsia, cough, cold, vertigo. The plant from Japan is reported to contain labdene type diterpene glycosides.

*Aster diplostephioides (DC) CB Clarke. (Asteraceae)*
The flowers are used in Tibetan medicine, they are said to have a bitter taste and a cooling potency. Antidote, febrifuge, haemostatic and tonic, are used in the treatment of infectious fevers, influenza, nose bleeds, poisoning, sores from environmental poisoning and an inability to stretch or contract the limbs.

*Delphinium brunonianum Royle (Ranunculaceae)*
Amchi name: Bcha-rog-spos. It is commonly known as Musk Larkspur. In the Himalayas it is only used to destroy ticks on animals.

*Rhododendron anthopogon D.Don (Ericaceae)*
In Nepal, the leaves are boiled and the vapor inhaled to treat coughs and colds.

*Rhododendron lepidotum Wall ex D Don (Ericaceae)*
Two new coumarin glycosides, named rhodonin and rhodonetin were isolated from the aerial parts of *R. lepidotum*. The plant is reported to have antioxidant and antiviral activities.

*Neopicrorhiza scrophulariiflora (Pennell) DY Hong (Scrophulariaceae)*
This plant is found in the inventory of medicinal plants used in the Amchi system of medicine. It is among rare plants used in the Amchi system of medicine, which has been investigated phytochemically. Phenylpropanoid glycosides: scrophulosides A and B, androsin and picroside- I have been reported. Three iridoid glycosides, picrorosides A, B and C, and a cucurbitacin glycoside, scrophoside A, have been isolated from the rhizomes, along with two known iridoid glycosides, picrosides I and II, and three known cucurbitacin glycosides.
Four new non-glycosidic iridoids, piscrocins D, E, F, and G, as well as two new iridoid glycosides, piscrosides A and B, were isolated from the roots, together with seven known iridoids. The compounds demonstrated hepatoprotective activity on CCl₄-induced hepatocytes damage in vitro, and the structure-activity relationships was established.

*Maharanga bicolor* (Boraginaceae)

It is used in Nepalese ethnomedicine for the treatment of several diseases. In the course of screening investigations the dichloromethane extract of the roots of Maharanga bicolor was found to inhibit the growth of gram positive bacteria. Bio-assay directed fractionation led to the isolation of five active naphthazarins, deoxyalkannin, alkannin, acetylalkannin, alkannin 3-hydroxyisovalerate and alkannin β-acetoxyisovalerate. Alkannin, acetylalkannin, alkannin 3-hydroxyisovalerate and alkannin β-acetoxyisovalerate showed antibacterial activity against multi resistant human pathogenic Staphylococcus and Enterococcus species. Deoxyalkannin, alkannin 3-hydroxyisovalerate and alkannin β-acetoxyisovalerate, showed antiviral activity, against herpes simplex virus type.

*Cremanthodium ellisii* Hook. f.) Kitam. ex Kitam. and Gould (Asteraceae)

The plant is reported to contain esters of sesquiterpene polyalcohols, phenylpropanoids and lignans. These compounds are reported to have antibacterial and anticancer activities.

**Further reading**


Chapter 9

Ethnopharmacology of Algae

9.1 Introduction
The oldest account known about the use of algae comes from the Chinese King, Shen Nang 2,700 years B.C. Data on the usage of algae in Traditional Indian Medicine (TIM) or Ayurveda is scarce with the exception of Ceratophyllum demersum Linn. (Ceratophyllaceae). The paste of C. demersum is used in bleeding hemorrhoids. It is also used in polydipsia, diarrhea, fever, bleeding diathesis, and biliousness.

In Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM), several sea-weeds have been used. Nostoc muscorum Ag. and N. sphaeroides Kütz (Nostocaceae) are used in the treatment of night-blindness and burns. Saragassum fusiforme (Harvey) S. (Sargassaceae) has been used as an antifungal and anticoagulant in TCM since 8th century A.D. Kunbu (Laminaria and Ecklonia), Haizao (Sargassum) and Zicai (Porphyra) are integral parts of TCM. The Sargassum decoction is used in the treatment of obesity, breast and ovarian tumors and lymphadenitis. Kunbu and haizao are used in promoting diuresis. Laminaria japonica Aresch. (Laminariaceae) and Undaria pinnatifida (Harvey) Suringar (Phaeophyceae) are used traditionally in Korea to promote maternal health.

Carrageenan is obtained from Irish moss (Chondrus crispus); because of its mucus forming properties it has been used in lung diseases and to improve the bitter drug taste. Carrageenan has also been used in cases of digestive tract irritations and in diarrhea and dysentery. In France and Great Britain, carrageenan has been used to treat stomach ulcers due to its mucous properties.

Agar-agar obtained from Gelidium and Gracilaria sp. is used in constipation and stomach prolapse. Fucus vesiculosus Linn. (Fucoидеae) has been used for centuries in the treatment of thyroid, obesity, arteriosclerosis and digestive diseases. The recorded use of Fucus vesiculosus dates back to at least the time period of the Eclectic Physicians of the 19th century. Chlorella vulgaris yields chlorellin, an antibiotic compound.
Chondrus crispus Stackh. (Gigartinaceae) is used in bronchitis and diarrhea. Marine algae Gelidiopsis sp. (Gaisellaceae) is consumed in Indonesia by coastal communities for anti-aging property. Interestingly, the chloroform extract of Gelidiopsis sp. has an antioxidant activity. In Vietnam, seaweeds are used for treatment of cough, asthma, hemorrhoid, boils, goiter, urinary diseases, tumors, ulcers, and headaches.

9.2 Phytochemical and pharmacological investigations

Significant phytochemicals reported from algae

Plastocyanin and ferredoxin have been reported from Ceratophyllum demersum. A diterpenoid (dictyotetraene) has been isolated from Dictyota sp. from North Brittany Sea. Four diterpenoids (dischototetroal, dichotopentanol, dichotone and dichotodione) have been reported from Dictyota dichotoma (Hudson) Lamouroux (Dictyotaceae) growing in Pakistan. Several sterols, terpenes, polyols and certain metabolites have been isolated from these seaweeds. Some significant phytochemicals include dicdichane from Dictyota dichotoma and hauckiosterol from Dictyota hauckiana (Dictyotaceae) and Spatoglossum variabile Figari et De Notaris (Dictyoaceae); dictinol, dictindiol, dictintriol, amijiol and sargasterol from Dictyota indica Sonder (Dictyotaceae), padinolide from Colpomernia sinuosa (Mertens ex Roth) Derbes et Solier (Scytosiphonaceae) and Padina tetrastromatica Hauck (Dictyotaceae).

Sterols and volatiles have been reported from Cystoseira barbata J.Ag, (Phaeophaceae) collected from the Black Sea. A diterpenoid (stypolactone) has been isolated from Stypopodium zonale (J.V. Lamouroux) Papenfuss (Dyctiotaceae). Spirulina platensis Linn. is rich in vitamins, proteins, pigments and polyunsaturated fatty acids.

Diterpenes (isopachydictyolal from D. dichotoma and 4a-acetyldictyodial from D. linearis) were isolated from plants growing in Greece. Dunaliella salina UTEX is a single celled, salt-water micro-alga that accumulates massive amounts of carotenoids (α-Carotene, and β-Carotene) and xanthophylls (cryptoxanthin, lutein, and zeaxanthin). It is also reported to contain volatile compounds like β-Cyclocitrall, α- and β-ionone, neophytdiene, and phytol.

Anticoagulant activity

It has reported that aqueous extract of carrageenan, even in great dilution, acts as blood anticoagulant.
Antimicrobial activity

Antiviral

Polysaccharides and polyphenols obtained from Fucus vesiculosus have anti-HIV activity. It has been postulated that adhesion is the first step in HIV infection; the active compounds from Fucus vesiculosus block adhesion which prevents transmission of HIV-1 (Beress et al., 1993). A novel reverse transcriptase inhibitor has been isolated from Fucus vesiculosus. It inhibits HIV reverse transcriptase by competing with the nucleic acid substrate.

Polysaccharides of Gracilaria corticata J. Agardh. (Gracilariaceae) showed selective antiviral activity against herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2. The galatofurans isolated from Adenocystis utricularis (Bory de Saint-Vincent) Skottsberg (Adenocystaceae) have inhibitory activity against herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2.

A sulfated polysaccharide fraction isolated from hot water extract of Caulerpa racemosa (Forsskal) J. Agardh. (Caulerpaceae) was reported to be active against herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1) and type 2 (HSV-2) in vitro cells (Ray, 2004). Galactofucan, a sulfated polysaccharide isolated from aqueous extract of Undaria pinnatifida (Harvey) Suringar (Phaeophyceae) has significant anti viral activity against several strains of herpes simplex virus.

Diterpenoids isolated from Northeast Brazil algae, Dictyota pfaffii Schnetter (Dictyotaceae) showed strong anti-HSV-1 activity in vitro but only one compound inhibited the reverse transcriptase enzyme of HIV-1. Meroditerpenes (maric acid, epitaondiol and the peroxylactone of 5’a-desmethyl-5’-acetylatomaric acid) isolated from Brazilian algae, Stypopodium zonale showed strong anti-HSV-1 activity in vitro. It also inhibited the transcriptase reverse enzyme of HIV-1.

Antibacterial and antifungal

Crustose germlings of Chondrus crispus have antibacterial activity against benthic diatoms. The methanolic and ethyl acetate extracts of Gelidiopsis sp. from Indonesia have antibacterial activity against Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Vibrio damselfly and Staphylococcus aureus. Fractions of the hexane, ethyl ether and dichloromethane extract of Cystoseira tamariscifolia Hudson (Cystoseriaceae) has significant antimicrobial and cytotoxic activities.

Methanolic extracts of Nitella tenuissima (Desv.) Kuetzing. (Characeae), Microchaete tenera Thuret ex Bornet (Microchaetaceae) and Sphaeroplea annulina (Roth) Ag. (Sphaeropleaceae) have been investigated for in vitro antimicrobial activity against Proteus vulgaris, Bacillus cereus, Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Aspergillus niger, Aspergillus flavus and Rhizopus nigricans using agar cup-plate method. Blue-green alga,
namely, Microchaete tenera; and green algae, namely, Nitella tenuissima and Sphaeroplea annulina showed significant antibacterial activity against Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Microchaete tenera showed good antimicrobial activity against Proteus vulgaris and Aspergillus niger. Sphaeroplea annulina showed feeble antifungal activity against Aspergillus flavus.

Different pressurized liquid extracts obtained from Dunaliella salina has significant antimicrobial activity against coli, Staphylococcus aureus, Candida albicans, and Aspergillus niger (Miguel et al., 2006). Fatty acids were identified as possible antimicrobial agents. Methanolic extracts of Corallina officinalis Linn. (Rhodophyceae), Cladostephus spongiosis (Hudson) C Agardh, Cystoseira barbata J.Ag., Dictyota dichotoma (Hudson) Lamouroux and Halopteris filicina (Grateloup) Kützing (Phaeophyceae) and Ulva rigida C.Ag. (Chlorophyceae) demonstrated antibacterial activity against Staphylococcus aureus and Enterobacter aerogens.

The four tricyclic diterpenoids isolated from Stochospermum marginatum C. Agardh Kützing have also been tested against three gram positive and six gram negative bacteria as well as six pathogenic fungi, and were found to exhibit strong antimicrobial activity.

Antifilarial

The crude extract of Indian algae, Botryocladia leptopoda (J.Agardh) Kylin (Rhodymeniaceae) and its hexane fraction has significant antifilarial activity against the animal filarial species included Litomosoides sigmodontis and Acanthocheilonema viteae. There was a marked reduction in the peripheral microfilarial level in both of the rodent filarial parasites.

Antioxidant activity

The chloroform extract of Gelidiopsis sp. from Indonesia has been reported to have significant antioxidant activity. Water soluble extract of Sargassum thunbergii Mertl O. Kuntze and purified proteases have significant antioxidant activity. The antioxidant activity heightened with increased concentrations of the extracts. The extract has a significant protective effect against DNA damage. Methanolic extracts of kaki, Laminaria japonica and Undaria pinnatifida have free radical scavenging effect against 1, 1-diphenyl-2-picrylhydrazyl in animal models.

Antitumor activity

A phycocolloid (carbohydrates) developed from Chondracanthus chamissoi (J. Agardh) Kützing ex Gigartina chamissoi (C. Ag.) J. Agardh (endemic to temperate southern Pacific coasts) has been used in the treatment of oncologic patients, producing a good recuperation in 68% of 162 patients.

Pahayokolide A, an active metabolite of Lyngbya sp. isolated from the Florida Everglades, was shown to inhibit a number of cancer cell lines.
Neutral and acidic polysaccharides and their protein complexes fractionated and purified from *Sargassum thunbergii* Mertl O. Kuntze demonstrated antitumor activity in mice with Ehrlich carcinoma.

**Hypoglycemic and lipolytic activity**

In some *Chondrus* species, a genus related with *Gigartina*, a series of sterols have been found, all of which have hypocholesterolemic activity. These sterols can also depress blood pressure in human atherosclerosis as well as low cholesterol levels in rabbits and rats.

A polysaccharide extracted from *Fucus vesiculosus* was evaluated for hypolipidemic activity in normal and hyperlipiemic rats. The alga significantly lowered total cholesterol and low-density-lipoprotein-cholesterol levels, and significantly increased the antiatherogenic index.

Compounds obtained from extracts of *Cystoseira barbata* have shown hypoglycemic and lipolytic activity. A new phloroglucinol derivative isolated from brown alga *Eisenia bicyclis* (Kjellman) Setchell (Phaeophyceae) from Japan has been reported to be effective in the treatment of diabetic complications. Polysaccharides from *Laminaria japonica* Aresch. reduced the concentration of cholesterol, triglycerides, and high density lipoprotein in quails.

**Miscellaneous activity**

A polyhalogenated monoterpene, plocamadiene A isolated from red marine algae, *Plocamium corallorhiza* Turner J. Hooker & Harvey (Plocamiaceae) releases histamine from peritoneal mast cells in the rats and guinea pigs. *Gracilaria corticata* J. Agardh. (Gracilariaceae) has been reported to have significant cholinesterase activity.

### 9.3 Spirulina, Aphanizomenon and Chlorella sp.

*Spirulina platensis* Linn., *Spirulina fusiformis* Voronichin (Oscillatoriaceae)

These algal genera deserve special mention as regards to medicine. Animal research has reported antiviral, antioxidant, neuroprotective, and cardio protective activities of *S. platensis*. *Spirulina fusiformis* Arch. has been reported to be nephroprotective in animal studies. C-phycocyanin from *S. platensis* has hepatoprotective, anti-inflammatory and antioxidant activities. C-phycocyanin has been reported to affect the stem cells found in bone marrow.

Clinical studies suggest that *Spirulina* is effective in melanosisis and keratosis due to chronic arsenic poisoning. It improves hemoglobin levels in malnourished children and is effective in allergic rhinitis or hay fever. A clinical trial from India, suggested a possible role of *Spirulina fusiformis* in
chemo prevention for oral cancer. A recent clinical trial, reported hypolipidemic and antihypertensive activities of 4.5 G of Spirulina per day for 6 wk.

**Aphanizomenon flos aquae (Linn.) Ralfs ex Bornet & Flahault (Nostocaceae)**

This alga is reported to contain more protein and chlorophyll than any other food source. Animal trials have reported immunomodulator and hypolipidemic activities of the alga. A clinical trial, reported positive result of *Aphanizomenon flos aquae* in Alzheimer’s disease.

**Chlorella vulgaris Whittaker & Margulis, Chlorella pyrenoidosa Whittaker & Margulis and Chlorella kessleri Fott & Novakova (Chlorellaceae)**

Animal trials in India, have reported anti-tumor, radio protective, and gastroprotective activities of *Chlorella vulgaris* and *Chlorella kessleri*. Human trials have reported the usefulness of *Chlorella pyrenoidosa* in hyperlipidemia, hypertension and fibromyalgia.

**Conclusion**

One of the reasons for exploring biological compounds in algae is the potential for medical use. Algae contain numerous bioactive constituents as shown in investigational studies. However, much work remains to link medical effects with specific algae species. Traditional medical claims need to be justified by pre-clinical and clinical research.

**References and further reading**


Ethnopharmacology of Algae


Chapter 10

Ethnopharmacology of Lichens

10.1 Introduction
The Lichen division is comprised of at least 8 orders, 45 families, and 6,000 species. Information on the edible and medicinal uses of lichens is scattered. Many lichens are known to have potent antibiotic properties, and many are edible. However, some lichens do contain toxic substances, so one should not graze randomly on them.

10.2 Lichens in folk and traditional medicine
‘Doctrine of Signatures’ written in the 15th century stated “A plant could treat a disease it most looked like”. This formed the basis of phytotherapeutics in traditional systems of medicines like Traditional Indian Medicine (TIM) or Ayurveda, Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM), and Western Medical Herbalism. Interestingly, the word lichen is derived from the Greek word ‘Leprous’ and refers to use of lichens in treating skin diseases due to their peeling-skin appearance. Lichen like *Lobaria pulmonaria* (L.) Hoffm. (Stictaceae) and *Parmelia sulcata* Taylor (Parmeliaceae) have been used in the treatment of pulmonary and cranial diseases, respectively. Similarly, *Xanthoria parietina* (L.) Th. Fries (Lobariaceae), being yellow, was used to cure jaundice.

Medicinal uses of lichens are linked with folklore. The medicinal use of lichens can be traced back to the 18th dynasty (1700–1800 BC) when *Evernia furfuracea* (L.) Mann or (Parmeliaceae) was first used as a drug. Some lichens were claimed to be good for coughs, jaundice, rabies and restoring loss of hair. Herbal medicinal texts included an account of several species of lichens including *Cladonia, Evernia, Lobaria, Parmelia, Peltigera, Pertusaria, Physcia, Rocella, Usnea* and *Xanthoria*. During the Middle Ages, lichens figured prominently in herbals used by practitioners.
Peltigera sp., mixed with 2 drachms of black pepper, for 4-d, in half-pint of warm milk, was used for rabies or hydrophobia. Linnaeus named Peltigera, in 1753 as Lichen caninus (the Dog Lichen) as it has rhizines on the lower surface that resembles teeth, hence a specific epithet of canina. In traditional medicine, Peltigera canina (L.) Willd is used as liver tonic and laxative. In Ireland, Peltigera aphthosa (L.) Wiild. was used as a vermifuge.

People of northern California used Letharia vulpina (L.) Hue. (Parmeliaceae) in stomach diseases. A novel species of Dictyonema was used by the Waorani as a hallucinogen. In Arabian medicine, Alectoria usneoides was used in the treatment of splenomegaly (enlarged spleen).

In China, Usnea diffracta Vain (Parmeliaceae) was used in medicine around 500 A.D. (Strickmann,). Hippocrates prescribed Usnea barbata for uterine ailments. In Sweden, Parmelia saxatilis (L.) Ach. is used to treat warts. In China, Lethariella cashmeriana Krog-Wei, L. seranderi (Motyka) Obermayer, L. sinensis J. C. Wei & Jiang (Parmeliaceae) and Thamnolia vermicularis Hytter i Norden Danske (Icmadophilaceae) are used as medicated teas.

Usneasp. are used in Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM), homeopathic system of medicine and traditional medicine in Pacific Islands and New Zealand. Usnea sp. are valued for demulcent properties and finds use for mild inflammation of the oral and pharyngeal mucosa. Usnea filipendula Stirt was used in the former Soviet Union for cuts and wounds.

Spanish folk medicine has documented the use of lichens in various medical ailments. Decoction of Pseudevernia furfuracea (L.) Zopf. (Parmeliaceae) is used in Alfacar and Viznar in respiratory ailments. Ramalina bourgeana Mont. ex Nyl. (Ramalinaceae) is consumed for diuretic and stone-dissolving (lithontriptic) properties (González-Tejero, 1995). Xanthoparmelia scabrosa (Taylor) Hale (Parmeliaceae) is an ingredient for various aphrodisiac formulations sold in the international market. Tea prepared from Flavocetraria nivalis (L.) Kärnefelt & Thell (Parmeliaceae) is used in the treatment of motion-sickness and heart attacks by the natives of Qollahuaya Andeans in Poland.

Cetraria islandica (L.) Ach. (Parmeliaceae) commonly known as Irish moss, is a valued folk remedy for lung diseases, kidney and bladder complaints as well as externally for poorly healed wounds (Bown, 2001). Traditionally it is used for mild inflammation of oral and pharyngeal mucosa. It is also valued in dyspepsia and loss of appetite. In European folk medicine, it is used in the treatment of cancer.

Reindeer lichens are important medicinal agents. Cladonia rangiferina (L.) F. H. Wigg. syn. Cladina rangiferina (L.) Nyl. (Cladoniaceae) is the commonly studied reindeer lichen. Northern native people used reindeer lichen in medicinal teas to treat colds, arthritis, fevers and other problems. Reindeer lichens were also used as a poultice to relieve the ache of
arthritic joints. Reindeer lichens have been taken to treat fever, jaundice constipation, convulsions, coughs, and tuberculosis. *Cladonia pyxidata* (L.) Hoffm. is a useful remedy for whooping cough.

Three *Parmelia* sp. (*Parmelia chinense* (Osbeck) Hale & Ahti., syn *P. perlata* (Huds.) Ach. *P. sancti-angeli* (Lynge) Hale and *P. peforatum* (Jacq.) A. Massal. are used for the Indian drug chharila, which is used as an aphrodisiac. In India *Parmelia chinense* is used as a diuretic and as a liniment for headaches and powder to help wounds heal. *Parmelia sancti-angeli* is used in Central India to treat Tinea (ringworm) disease. Ash of the lichen, mixed with mustard or linseed oil, is applied to the affected area. *Parmelia peforatum* is medically recognized in Afghanistan.

*Parmelia nepalense* (Talyor) Hale ex Sipman is used in Nepal in the treatment of toothache and sore throat. In the western Himalayas *Thamnolia vermicularis* (Schwartz) Ach. (Icmadophilaceae) is used as an antiseptic. In Sikkim, *Heterodermia diademata* (Talyor) D.D. Awas. (Physciaceae) is used for cuts and wounds.

### 10.3 Phytochemical and pharmacological investigations

Lichen metabolites exert a wide variety of biological actions including antibiotic, antinocobacterial, antiviral, anti-inflammatory, analgesic, antipyretic, antiproliferative and cytotoxic effects. Even though these manifold activities of lichen metabolites have now been recognized, their therapeutic potential has not yet been fully explored and thus remains pharmaceutically unexploited. The utility of lichens is due to the of range of secondary compounds produced by them.

**Antimicrobial activity**

**Antibacterial**

Antibiotic properties of lichens are of special interest to scientists. According to one estimate, 50% of all lichens have antibiotic properties. Burkholler and co workers (1944) were pioneers initiating research on lichens as antibacterial agents. They tested 42 lichens for antibiotic properties and 27 were reported to inhibit growth of bacteria.

*Parmelia physodes* (L.) Ach. was reported to be an antibiotic. Usnic acid is a wide-spectrum antibiotic characterized from lichens. Vulpinic acid has mild antibiotic property. Atranorin has been found to be much less biologically active than usnic and vulpinic acids. Usnic, evernic and vulpinic acids inhibited the growth of gram positive bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus, Bacillus subtilis,* and *Bacillus megaterium,* but the acids had no effect on the gram negative bacteria *Escherichia coli* or *Pseudomonas aeruginosa.*

Usnic acid isolated from lichens from the south of Spain has high activity against Gram-positive bacteria. Acetone, diethyl ether and ethanol
extracts of the lichen *Cetraria aculeata* (Schreber) Fr. and its active constituent protolichesterinic acid were tested positive against *Escherichia coli*, *Aeromonas hydrophila*, *Proteus vulgaris*, *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and *Listeria monocytogenes*.

Alecostarmentin, (-)-usnic acid, physodic acid and 8'-O-ethyl-beta-alectoronic acid isolated from the alcoholic extract of the lichen *Alectoria sarmentosa* (Ach.) Ach. (Alectoriaceae) showed antimicrobial activity. *Hypogymnia apinnata* (atranorin), *Letharia columbiana* (vulpinic acid), *Lobaria pulmonaria* (Stictic acid, consictic acid, and norstictic acid) and *Usnea filipendula* (Usnic acid and salazinic acid) have been reported to have significant antibiotic activity against *Micrococcus luteus*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Salmonella gallinarum* and *Serratia marcescens* respectively.

The acetone and methanol extracts of *Lasallia pustulata* (L.) Méret. (Umbilicariaceae), *Parmelia sulcata* Taylor, and *Umbilicaria crustulosa* (Ach.) Frey (Umbilicariaceae), manifested antibacterial activity against the majority of species of bacteria tested, in addition to selective antifungal activity. Acetone, chloroform, diethyl ether, methanol, and petroleum ether extracts of *Parmelia sulcata* and its constituent (salazinic acid) demonstrated antibacterial activity against *Aeromonas hydrophila*, *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Proteus vulgaris*, *Yersinia enterocolitica*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Candida albicans*, *Candida glabrata*, *Aspergillus niger*, *Aspergillus fumigatus*, and *Penicillium notatum*.

3-hydroxyphysodic acid isolated from *Hypogymnia tubulosa* (Schaerer) Havaas (Parmeliaceae) showed antimicrobial activity against *Aeromonas hydrophila*, *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Proteus vulgaris*, *Salmonella typhimurium*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus faecalis*, and *Candida albicans*.

Extracts of *Xanthoparmelia pokornyi* (Vainio) Hale (Parmeliaceae) and its constituents (gyrophoric and stenosporic acid) have been reported to be potential antimicrobials. Extracts of *Pseudevernia furfuracea* and its constituents (physodic acid, chloroatranorin, atranorin, and olivetoric acid) have significant antimicrobial activity. Hirtusneanoside isolated from *Usnea hirta* (L.) Wigg. (Parmeliaceae) showed growth inhibitory activities against Gram-positive bacteria.

**Antifungal**

Parietin, anthraquinone isolated from methanol extract of *Caloplaca cerina* (Ehrh. ex Hedwig) Th.Fr. (Teloschistaceae) has been reported to have significant antifungal activity. Extracts of Andean lichens *Protousnea poeppigii* (Nees & Flot.) Vain. (Parmeliaceae) and *Usnea florida* var. *rigida* Acharius demonstrated antimicrobial activity against the pathogenic
fungi *Microsporum gypseum*, *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* and *T. rubrum*. Isodivaricatic acid, 5-propylresorcinol, divaricatinic acid and usnic acid were identified as antifungal agents.

### Antiviral

Usnic acid isolated from *Teloschistes chrysophthalmus* (L.) Th. Fr. (Teloschistaceae) and parietin isolated from *Ramalina celastris* demonstrated antiviral activity against the arena viruses Junin and Tacaribe.

### Antioxidant activity

Phenolic constituents from the lichen *Parmotrema stippeum* (Nyl.) Hale (Parmeliaceae) including methyl orsenillate, orsenillic acid, atranorin and lecanoric acid showed moderate antioxidant activity. An animal study reported antioxidant activity of the lichen *Cetraria islandica*. Stictic acid derivatives from the lichen *Usnea articulata* (Ach.) Motyka were reported to have significant antioxidant activity.

### Antitumor activity

Pannarin inhibited cell growth and induces cell death in human prostate carcinoma DU-145 cells. The orcinol derivatives tenuiorin and methyl orsellinate present in the extract of *Peltigera leucophlebia* (Nyl.) Gyeln. (Peltigeraceae) exhibited in vitro inhibitory activity against 15-lipoxygenase from soybeans. A correlation has been observed between 5-lipoxygenase inhibition and antiproliferative effects for related lichen metabolites. On this account, tenuiorin and methyl orsellinate were further tested for antiproliferative activity on cultured human breast, pancreatic and colon cancer cell lines. Methyl orsellinate lacked antiproliferative activity but tenuiorin depicted moderate activity. Bianthraquinone glycosides, colleflaccinosides isolated from *Collema flaccidum* (Ach.) Ach. (Collemataceae) collected in Israel and Russia, were reported to have antitumor activity.

### Immunomodulator activity

Heteroglycans and a beta-glucan isolated from *Thamnolia vermicularis* var. *subuliformis* were tested for *in vitro* immunomodulating activity and reported to have various influences on the immune system.

### Tyrosinase-inhibitory activity

edible and medicinal lichens, *Umbilicaria (Gyrophora) esculenta* and *Usnea longissima* manifested in vitro melanogenesis inhibitory. It was concluded that lichen extracts affected the activity of tyrosinase via the inhibition of tyrosinase glycosylation.

10.4 Recent phytochemical investigations on lichens

Two tridepsides (2,4-Di-O-methylgyrophoric acid and 2,4,5-tri-O-methylhiascic acid) have been isolated from *Parmelia damaziana* Zahlbr. Lasallic acid, a tridepside has been reported from *Lasallia asiae-orientalitis* Whittaker & Margulis (Umbilicariaceae). γ-butyrolactone acid, (-)-isomuronic acid and gyrophoric acid have been isolated from *Punctelia microsticta* (Mull. Arg.) Krog (Parmeliaceae). Dasypogalactone, a lactone has been reported from *Usnea dasygopa* Rohl growing in Indonesia.

A new red anthraquinone, draculone, has been isolated from the corticolous tropical lichen *Melanotheca cruenta* (Mont.) Miill. (Trypetheliaceae) together with anthraquinone pigment; haematommone. Beta-orcinol metabolites viz hypotrachynic acid, deoxystictic acid, cryptostictinolide and 8’-methylconstictic acid have been reported from the lichen *Hypotrachyna revoluta* (Flörke) Hale. (Parmeliaceae).
**Fig. 10.1** Significant phytochemicals reported from lichens.

### References and further reading


Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology


Chapter 11

Ethnopharmacology of Bryophytes

11.1 Introduction
Liverworts and mosses are small, low-growing plants, which constitute the phylum bryophyta. Bryophytes, which are phylogenetically placed between vascular plants and algae, form a unique division in the plant kingdom. There are more than 22,000 members of mosses (Bryophyta) in the world. About 2850 bryophytes are reported to have medicinal value. They are now increasingly used for diverse purposes including pollution control and as new sources of pharmaceuticals.

11.2 Bryophytes in traditional systems of medicine
There is no historical record, explaining the use of liverworts and mosses in Ayurveda, the Indian system of medicine. One research claims that mosses from the species of Barbula, Fissidenc, Minitum, Thuidium and species of liverworts like Asterella, Dumortiera, Marchantia, Pellia, Plagiochasna and Stephenrencella-Anthoceros were present in the vicinity of Shilajit (Asphaltum punjabianum) exuding rocks and these bryophytes are responsible for the formation of Shilajit. Bryophytes reveal the occurrence of minerals and metals in their tissue such as copper, silver, zinc, iron, lead etc., which are similar to the elements present in Shilajit.

Chinese Traditional Medicine named 40 kinds of bryophytes used to treat cardiovascular diseases, tonsillitis, bronchitis, cystitis, and skin infections. Some species of Fissidens and Polytrichum were utilized as diuretic and hair growth stimulating drugs in China more than 400 years ago. Marchantia polymorpha is used in the treatment of liver diseases like jaundice and hepatitis. In China, Rhodobryum giganteum (Schwaegr.) Par and R. roseum (Hedw) Limpr are used in the treatment of heart ailments.

North American Indians used Bryum, Minitum, Philonotis spp., and Polytrichum juniperinum to heal burns, bruises, and wounds. The Seminole people in North America were reported to use Barbula unguiculata
Hedwig, Bryum capillare T. Bickley and Octoblepharum albidum (L.) Hedw as a febrifuge and anodyne. Willow moss, Fontinalis antipyretica Hedw was once reputed as a febrifuge (documented in the Journal of Linnaeus). Dried Sphagnum was used extensively as a surgical dressing during the First World War. In France, Marchantia polymorpha was used to promote diuresis. In the Himalayas, Riccia sp. was used in the treatment of Tinea (ringworm) infestations.

The use of bryophytes as antibacterial or disinfectant agents deserves special mention. Sphagnum teres (Schimp.) Ångstr is used in ophthalmologic diseases. In China and Bolivia, Fissidens osmundoides Hedwig is used an antibacterial agent to treat inflammatory conditions of the pharynx and larynx. Haplocladium microphyllum (Hedw) Broth is used as a demulcent medicine in inflammatory conditions like bronchitis, cystitis, tonsillitis and tympanitis. Philonotis fontana (Hedw) Brid is used by Go suite native people as a soothing preparation for healing burns.

11.3 Phytochemistry of bryophytes

Extracts of many species of bryophytes are known to contain phenolic compounds. Sterols, isoflavonoids, flavonoids, and bioflavonoids have been reported. Terpenoids, phenolics and volatile constituents have also been investigated in some bryophytes. Rhodobryum giganteum is reported to contain volatile oil, lactone and amino acid. Essential oil of Plagiomnium undulatum (Hedw) T Kop is reported to contain butenolides. Quercetin, luteolin and apigenin have been identified as major flavonoids in Marchantia convoluta Gao et KC Zhang.

Marchantia polymorpha Linn from Japan has been reported to accumulate eicosapentaenoic acid. Diterpenoids have been reported from the New Zealand liverwort Jungermannia species. Isotachis japonica Steph is reported to contain aromatic esters. Anoectantium bicolor Renaudl & Cardot has been reported to contain the highest amount of neurotransmitter, acetylcholine, among bryophytes.

11.4 Pharmacological investigations

The antifungal and antifeedant activity of bryophytes is widely known, but mainly from in vitro studies. Recent exploratory studies done in Germany, Peru and Bolivia have demonstrated that extracts derived from native bryophyte species have significant effects on human pathogenic fungi and may cure skin diseases. Several Indian bryophytes have been identified as a potential source of antimycobacterial agents. As pointed out, Anoectantium bicolor is a rare bryophyte with anti cholinesterase activity. A brief account of pharmacological investigations carried out on bryophytes is summarized below:
**Antifungal activity**

Fractionation of the ethanolic extract of *Homalia trichomanoides* (Hedw) B.S.G. lead to isolation of 3-$\beta$-methoxyserrat-14-en-21-$\beta$-ol, atranorin (Fig. 10.1), and methyl 2, 4-dihydroxy-3, 6-dimethylbenzoate as antifungal compounds active against *Candida albicans*.

*Pallavicinia lyellii* (Hook) Carruth is known to have antifungal activity against *Aspergillus fumigatus* under *in vitro* conditions. Further investigations led to the discovery of steroid as the antifungal compound from *P. lyellii*. The compound was found to be effective against aspergillosis-induced mortality in immuno-compromised mice.

*Hypnum cupressiforme* Hedwig has significant antifungal effects.

*Herbertus aduncus* subsp. *hutchinsiae* (Gottsche) R.M.Schust. has antifungal activity against *Botrytis cinerea*, *Pythium debaryanum* and *Rhizoctonia solani*. (-)$\alpha$-herbertenol, (-)$\beta$-herbertenol, and (-)$\alpha$-formylherbertenol were identified as antifungal constituents (Fig. 11.1).

Bioassay-directed fractionation of the MeCOEt extract of the American liverwort, *Porella cordeana* (Hueben.) Evans yielded drimenin and aristolone which were moderately toxic towards DNA-repair-deficient mutant of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Fig. 11.2).
**Antibacterial activity**

An acetone extract of the Chinese moss, *Pleurochaete squarrosa* (Brid.) Lindb. was reported to be active against some gram-negative strains. The acetone and methanol extracts of *Palustriella commutata* (Hedw.) Ochyra (native to Turkey) were studied for antibacterial activity. The acetone extract had a potential activity against gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria. Acetone extracts of the moss, *Rhynchostegium riparioides* (Hedw.) C. Jens has significant antibacterial activity against gram-negative bacteria.

Sanionins A and B isolated from the moss *Sanionia georgica-unicinata* Ochyra, (collected on the Antarctic Livingston Island) showed activity against important Gram-positive pathogens, such as mycobacteria, multi-resistant staphylococci, and vancomycin resistant enterococci. Sanionins A and B showed anti-inflammatory activity and low cytotoxicity along with antibacterial activity. The extract of Stringy Moss, *Leptodictyum riparium* (Hedw.) Warnst. inhibited activity against conventional antibiotic-resistant *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *Dicranum scoparium* Hedw. has strong antibacterial activity against gram-negative bacteria.

**Anti-cancer activity**

Extracts of *Polytrichum juniperum* Hedw were reported to have anticancer activity against Sarcoma 37. Diplophyllin (Fig. 11.3), an ent-eudesmanolide isolated from *Diplophyllum albicans* (L) Dum and *D. taxifolium* (Wahlenb) Dumort showed significant anticancer activity against human epidermoid carcinoma.

![Fig. 11.3 Structure of Diplophyllin.](image)

Sesquiterpenoids, costunolide and tulipinolide (Fig. 11.4), isolated from *Cconocephalum supradecomositum* (Lindb.) Steph, *Frullania monocera* (Hook f & Tayl) Gottsche, Lindenh & Nees, *F. tamarisci* (L) Dumortier, *Machantia polymorpha*, *Porella japonica* (Sande Lac) Mitt. and *Wiesnerella denudata* (Mitt) Steph, *Lepidozia vitrea* Steph and *Plagiophila semidecurrens* Lehm et Lindenh demonstrated anticancer activity against carcinoma of the nasopharynx.
Marchantin A (Fig. 11.5) from Marchantia palacea Bertal, M polymorpha L and M tosana Steph demonstrated anticancer activity against KB cells.

Perrottetin E isolated from Radula perrottetti and riccardin (Fig.11.6) isolated from Riccardia multifida (L) Gray showed anticancer activity similar to marchantin.

Benzonaphthoxanthenones (ohioensin A- E) isolated from Polytrichum ohioense Ren et Card, following bioassay-directed fractionation and three novel benzonaphthoxanthenones (1-O-methyl Hiroensin B, 1-O-methylidihydroohioensin B and 1,14-di-O-methylidihydroohioensin B)
and two novel cinnamoyl bibenzyls (pallidisetin A and B) isolated from the ethanol extract of *Polytrichum pallidisetum* Funck showed cytotoxicity against 9PS and several human tumor cell lines.

![Structure of Ohioensin A.](image)

**Fig. 11.7** Structure of Ohioensin A.

Crude methanolic extracts of mosses, *Isothecium subdiversiforme* Broth. and *Thamnobryum sandei* (Besch.) Iwatsuki seen commonly in South Japan demonstrated *in vitro* cytotoxicity against P-388 lymphocytic leukemia cells. Mayatansinoids are active cytotoxic principles of the two mosses.

*Claopodium crisipolium* (Hook) Ren & Card and *Plagiomnium venustum* (Mitt) T Kop were found to have P-388 activity against P-388 lymphocytic leukemia cells. *Bazzania trilobata* (L) S Gray, a liverwort from New Hampshire, showed KB activity and is reported to contain lignans. *Atrichum undulatum* (Hedw) PBeauv has broad spectrum antibacterial activity. *Barbula* and *Timmiella* species have been reported to have significant antibacterial activity.

**Cardio protective activity**

An ether extract of *Rhodobryum giganteum* (Schwaegr) Par. was reported to cure angina (chest-pain) and reduce the oxygen resistance by increasing the rate of flow in the aorta by over 30%.

**Miscellaneous activity**

In Britain, sphagnol, a derivative of *Sphagum* is used to relieve the itch of insect bites. Sphagnol is recognized as a useful application in eczema, psoriasis, pruritus, hemorrhoids, chilblains, scabies and acne.

One of the reasons for exploring biological compounds in bryophytes is the potential for medical use. Bryophytes contain numerous bioactive constituents as shown in investigational studies. However, much work remains to link medical effects with specific bryophyte species. Traditional medical claims need to be justified by pre-clinical and clinical research.
Further reading


Miller NG, Miller H. Make ye the bryophytes. Horticulture., 1979, 57, 40–47.


Chapter 12

Ethnopharmacology of Anthelmintic Ferns

12.1 Introduction

Pteridophytes constitute the primitive vascular plant groups which are found scattered all over the world. While not much consideration has been given towards the utility of pteridophytes; though they possess equal economic and medicinal importance. Ferns are represented by about 305 genera, comprising more than 10,000 species all over the world. The medicinal value of pteridophytes is known to man for more than 2000 years.

12.2 Ferns in traditional medicine

About 300 B.C., Theophrastus recommended oil extracted from ferns to expel internal parasites. Rhizomes of various shield fern species (*Polystichum* and *Dryopteris*) have been used since the 18th century as a cure for intestinal worms. *Cyathea manniana* Hook. (Cyatheaceae) from East Africa has been used by the Chagga and by German troops in the First World War as an anthelmintic. Pteridophytes find use in Homoeopathic, Ayurvedic, Tribal and Unani prescriptions for worm infestation. Aromatic compounds, glycosides and $\alpha$- and $\gamma$-pyrones are responsible for the anthelmintic, antibacterial, mutagenic and antifeedant effects of ferns.

12.3 Materia Medica and phytochemistry of anthelmintic ferns

*Actiniopteris radiata* L. (Adiantaceae)

It is commonly found in India and possesses anthelmintic activity. Powdered rhizome is used as an anthelmintic in homeopathic medicine. It contains rutin and sterols.
**Athyrium filix-femina** (L.) Roth. ex Mert. (Dryopteridaceae)
It is native to Britain and popularly known as lady fern. A liquid extract of the root is an effective anthelmintic, though it is less powerful than the male fern, *D. filix-mas*.

**Cheilanthes hirta** Sw. (Adiantaceae)
This fern is found in Swaziland. Powdered rhizome is used as an anthelmintic for tapeworm.

**Cibotium barometz** (L.) J. Smith (Dicksoniaceae)
In India, it is used as a remedy for tape worm. In veterinary practice it is used as a vermifuge.

**Cycathea medullaris** G. Forst. Sw. (Cyatheaceae)
It is native to New Zealand. The gum obtained from the fern is used as a vermifuge.

**Cystopteris fragilis** (L.) Bernh. (Dryopteridaceae)
It is commonly known as brittle bladder fern. It is cosmopolitan in distribution. A decoction of the roots has been used as an anthelmintic enema.

**Cyrtomium falcatum** (L.f.) C. Presl. (Dryopteridaceae)
It is known as holly fern and found from East Asia to the Himalayas. It is reported to be naturalized in parts of Britain. The rhizome is used as an anthelmintic, chiefly for expulsion of tapeworm.

**Cyrtomium fortunei-J.Sm** (Dryopteridaceae)
This fern is found in East Asia. A decoction is used in the treatment of worm infestations including hookworm, tapeworm, ascariasis, and filariasis.

**Dryopteris crassirhizoma** Nakai (Dryopteridaceae)
It is found in Korea. The rhizome is used against tapeworm and hookworm. It is reported to contain triterpenes and phenols.

**Dryopteris expansa** (C.Presl.) Fraser-Jenkins & Jermy (Dryopteridaceae)
It is found in the northern temperate zone, including Britain. The roots are rich in filicin. It is one of the most effective treatments known for tapeworms—its use should be immediately followed by a non-oily purgative such as magnesium sulfate in order to expel the worms from the body. An oily purge, such as caster oil, increases the absorption of the fern root and can be dangerous.
Dryopteris Filix-mas (L.) Schott (Dryopteridaceae)

It is grown as an ornamental fern in gardens. The oldest known anthelmintic now in use, as established historically, appears to be a male fern. It is sometimes referred to in ancient literature as Worm Fern. Many fern constituents display various types of bioactivities. The early physician, Theophrastus, recognized the value of the fern for treating tinea (ringworm) infections. Classical use of the plant as an anthelmintic included 5 to 8 g doses of the oleoresin extract. The fern has been used in traditional medicine for the treatment of worm infections.

The chemical composition of oleoresin of the rhizome of D. filix mas composition was ascribed to a group of related compounds commonly known as ‘phenol fraction of the oleoresin’ which were derivatives of 2-acylcyclol–exane-1, 3-dione.

Böhm showed the medical world that phloroglucinol group of compounds were responsible for anthelmintic activity of D. Filix-mas. Major phloroglucinol of D. Filix-mas is filicin or filicic acid (1.5%) and is considered to be the active principle. According to pharmacopoeia, the rhizome of D. Filix-mas should not contain less than 1.5% of filicin. Liquid extract of D. Filix-mas contains 25% w/w of filicin. Other phloroglucinols present in the rhizome of D.Filix-mas includes aspidin, desaspidin, paraspidin, margaspidin, aspidine, filicic acid, flavaspidic acid and filmarone.
Penittlä and Sundma (1963) reported trisaspis, trisdesaspidin and trisflavaspidic acid as antelmimic principles of genus *Dryopteris*. Aspidin and desapidin were reported to be active among phloroglucinols by Bowden et al., in 1965. Murakami et al., 1984 holds aspidinol and desaspidinol responsible for the antelmimic effects detected in extracts from various species of ferns of the genus *Dryopteris*. Aspidinol and desaspidinol have been reported from petroleum ether extract of the leaves and flowers *Leucosidea sericea* (Rosaceae).

Filicin and filmarone are active vermifuges and are particularly toxic to tapeworms. Following ingestion of the drugs, tinea are expelled within hours; however, a purgative typically is ingested concomitantly with the vermifuge to aid expulsion. The oleoresin paralyzes intestinal voluntary muscle and the analogous muscles of the tapeworm, which is then readily eliminated by the action of the purgative.

Preliminary preparation of *D. Filix-mas* with a milk diet and alba mixture for 2 d is followed by the drug in 3 divided doses in succession on an empty stomach in the morning followed by magnesium sulfate purgative. The head of the tapeworm is searched for in the stools that are passed. Castor oil must not be used because the oil aids the absorption
of filicic acid which is toxic. *D. Filix-mas* is contraindicated in alcoholism, pregnancy and in advanced diseases of the heart, liver and kidneys.

The rhizome of *D. Filix-mas* is strongly cytotoxic against band worms and liver flukes, although round worm (*Ascaris lumbricoides*) and pin worm (*Oxyuris vermiculatus*) are resistant. In combination with other anthelmintics, male fern extract has been reported to be effective against *Hymenolepis nana*, a small intestinal tapeworm. The components of the plant have been used as veterinary vermifuges. *D. Filix-mas* should be used with caution as in large doses it is poisonous. It is reported to be hepatotoxic and nephrotoxic.

The rhizomes of *Asplenium Filix-foemina* (Bernh.), *Aspidium oreopteris* (Sw.), and *A. spinulosum* (Sw.) resemble those of the male fern and have often been found mixed with it when imported. *D. juxtaposita* Christ is used as a substitute for the European male fern.

**Dryopteris lewalleana Pic.Serm. (Dryopteridaceae)**

In folk medicine of Swaziland, the Zulu and Xhosa, rhizome of the fern is used as anthelmintic.

**Dryopteris oreades Fomin. Polypodium vulgare**

It is commonly known as Mountain male fern. It is found in Britain. Its anthelmintic use is similar to *D. expansa*.

**Polypodium vulgare L. (Polypodiaceae)**

It is found in Europe, the Mediterranean, temperate Asia and eastern N. America. A tea or syrup of the whole plant is anthelmintic.

**References and further reading**


Chapter 13

Ethnopharmacology of Medicinal Orchids

13.1 Introduction

Orchidaceae is one of the largest families among angiosperms. According to one estimate the family includes 800 genera and 25,000 species. Orchids are well known for their economic importance and are widely cultivated for ornamental purposes. Orchids are cosmopolitan in distribution. *Vanilla planifolia* is a commercially important orchid as it is source of vanillin used as a foodstuff flavoring.

13.2 Historical aspects

The term orchid was coined by Theophrastus as the anatomy of the plants resembled testicles. The Greek word ‘orchid’ literally means testicles. This may account for the use of orchids as aphrodisiacs in ancient civilizations. Among the history of ancient alternative systems of medicine—Ayurveda and Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM) are on the forefront.

Asthavarga is an important ingredient of various classical Ayurvedic formulations like Chavyanprasa. Out of eight constituents of Ashtavarga, four have been reported to be orchids (see Table 7.1).

Traditional Chinese medicine widely utilizes orchids in medicines. A few of them have been subjected to phytochemical and pharmacological studies. In India work has been carried out on the chemical analysis of some medicinally useful orchids. *Eulophia campestris, Orchis latifolia, Vanda roxburghii* are among some of the important plants. *Dendrobium macraei* is another orchid of value from the Ayurvedic point of view as it is reported to be source of Jivanti. *Cypripedium parviflora* is widely used as an aphrodisiac and nervine tonic in Western Herbalism.

Many medicinal orchids are reported to contain alkaloids. Antimicrobial activities of some orchids have been suggested although
detailed investigations are still warranted. Recent studies have reported isolation of anthocyanins, stilboids and triterpenoids from orchids. Orchinol, hircinol, cypripedin, jibantine, nidemin and loroglossin are some important phytochemicals reported from orchids. Some of the phytochemicals isolated from orchids along with their biological source have been tabulated below:

**Table 13.1** Phytochemicals isolated from orchids along with the biological source.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of phytochemical</th>
<th>Phytochemical class</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Aeridin</td>
<td>Phenanthropyran</td>
<td><em>Aerides crispum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Agrostophyllinol</td>
<td>Triterpenoid</td>
<td><em>Agrostophyllum brevipes</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Agrostophyllinone</td>
<td>Triterpenoid</td>
<td><em>Agrostophyllum brevipes</em> and <em>Agrostophyllum callosum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Isoagrostophyllol</td>
<td>Triterpenoid</td>
<td><em>Agrostophyllum callosum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Orchinol, 6-methoxycoelonin, imbricatin, flaccidin, oxoflaccidin, isooxoflaccidin, flaccidinin, agrostophyllin, callosin, callosinin, callosomin, callosumin and callosumidin.</td>
<td>Stilbenoids</td>
<td><em>Agrostophyllum callosum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Arundinan</td>
<td>Stilbenoid</td>
<td><em>Arundina graminifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Cypripedin</td>
<td>1-4 phenanthrenequinone</td>
<td><em>Cypripedium calceolus pubescens</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Loroglossin</td>
<td>Glucoside</td>
<td><em>Orchis latifolia</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Jibantine</td>
<td>Alkaloid</td>
<td><em>Dendrobium macraei</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Gigantol</td>
<td>Bibenzyl</td>
<td><em>Dendrobium nobile</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Moscatilin</td>
<td>Bibenzyl</td>
<td><em>Dendrobium nobile</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Dendrobine</td>
<td>Alkaloid</td>
<td><em>Dendrobium nobile</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Anthocyanins</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Dracula chimaera</em>(21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Nudol</td>
<td>Phenanthrene</td>
<td><em>Eulophia nuda</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Melobin</td>
<td>Glycoside</td>
<td><em>Vanda roxburghii</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Nidemin</td>
<td>Triterpenoid</td>
<td><em>Nidema boothi</em> and <em>Scaphyglottis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Kinsenoside</td>
<td>Glycoside</td>
<td><em>Anoectochilus formosanus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Rotundatin and moscatin</td>
<td>Phenanthrene</td>
<td><em>Dendrobium moscatum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Gymopusin</td>
<td>Phenanthrene</td>
<td><em>Bulbophyllum gymopus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13.3 Materia Medica of medicinally important orchids

**Aerides crispum** Lindl.

**Origin:** India  
**Phytochemistry:** Phenanthropyran: aeridin.  
**Part used:** Tubers
**Aerides multiflorum** Roxb.

Syn: *Aerides affine* Lindl.

Distribution: The Himalayas (Garhwal to Sikkim), Assam, India and Myanmar.

Part used: Tubers.

Pre-clinical studies: Antibacterial.

**Agrostophyllum brevipes** Ridley

Distribution: E. Himalayas to Indo-China.

Phytochemistry: Triterpenoids: agrostophyllinol and agrostophyllinone. (9).

Part used: Tubers.

**Agrostophyllum callosum** Rchb. f.

Distribution: The Himalayas (Nepal to Bhutan), Assam, Myanmar, Thailand, Malaysia. (10)

Botany: *Agrostophyllum callosum* is 30–60 or higher plant. Stalks are creeping rhizomes. Rhizome 3–4 mm and stem erect. Leaves 8–13 cm wide and inflorescence 1–2 cm in diameter with short pedicles. Flowers pink or white colored. (10)

Phytochemistry: Triterpenoids: agrostophyllinone and isoagrostophyllol, stilbenoids: orchinol, 6-methoxycoelonin, imbricatin, flaccidin, oxoflaccidin, isooxoflaccidin, flaccidinin, agrostophyllin, callosin, callosinin, callosumin, callosuminin and callosumidin.

Part used: Tubers.

**Anoectochilus formosanus** Hayata

Distribution: Taiwan.

Botany: *Agrostophyllum callosum* is 30–60 or higher plant. Stalks are creeping rhizomes. Rhizome 3–4 mm and stem erect. Leaves 8-13 cm wide and inflorescence 1–2 cm in diameter with short pedicles. Flowers pink or white colored.

Phytochemistry: Glycoside: kinsenoside, and polysaccharide.

Part used: Tubers.

Action: Anticancer.

Therapeutics: Hepatitis, hypertension and cancer.

Pre-clinical studies: Antioxidant, antihyperglycemic, hepatoprotective: kinsenoside, and immuno-modulating: polysaccharide.
**Arundina graminifolia (D. Don) Hochr.**


Common name: Bamboo Orchid.

Distribution: The Himalayas of Nepal, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Laos, Cambodia, Vietnam, southern China, Japan, Taiwan and south to Malaya and Java.

Botany: *Arundina graminifolia* is a large terrestrial plant with erect stems that are 1.5–2.5 cm tall and up to 1.5 cm in diameter. The leaves are borne in two ranks and are narrowly oblong and grass-like, 12–30 cm long and 1.6–2.5 cm. The simple, terminal inflorescence may be branched and is 15–30 cm long. The large cattleya-like flowers are purple-red, flesh-colored or white and are up to 10 cm across. The lip is darker than the sepals and petals, often veined dark purple and has a yellow to orange-yellow patch at the base. The short-lived, scented flowers last for about 3 d and usually several open at the same time.

Phytochemistry: Benzyldihydrophenanthrene: arundinaol, stilbenoid: arundinane and phenanthrene constituents.

Part used: Rhizome.

Pre-clinical studies: Antibacterial.

---

**Bletilla striata (Thunb.) Rchb.f.**

Syn: *Bletilla hyacinthina* (Sm.) R.Br.

Common name: Hyacinthina orchid, urn orchid.

Distribution: East Asia: China and Japan.

Botany: *Bletilla striata* is a deciduous terrestrial orchid. The tuberous rhizomes go up to 60 cm, papery, thin leaves. Light green leaves are plicate and are about 7.5 cm wide.

Phytochemistry: Polysaccharide.

Parts used: Pseudo bulbs.

Actions: Antibacterial, anti-inflammatory, antiphlogistic, demulcent, pectoral, skin, styptic and vulnerary.

Therapeutics: Internal hemorrhage.

Human study: Vascular embolizing agent in interventional treatment of primary hepatic carcinoma.

---

**Cypripedium calceolus pubescens (Willd.) Correll**

Syn: *Cypripedium pubescens* Willd., *Cypripedium parviflorum* pubescens (Willd.) Knight.
Common name: Lady’s Slipper orchid.
Distribution: N. America to E. Asia - Japan.
Botany: Plants erect, 70–700 cm. Flowers: sepals greenish or yellowish (often obscured by darker markings); dorsal sepal suborbiculate or ovate to ovate-lance-acute, 19–80 × 7–40 mm; lateral sepals connate; synsepal 11–80 × 5–34 mm; petals horizontal to strongly descending, same color as sepals, commonly spirally twisted or undulate, sometimes flat, linear-lanceolate to lance-ovate or oblong, 24–97 × 3–12 mm; lip rather pale to deep yellow, very rarely white, rarely with reddish spots or suffusion on adaxial external surface, 15–54 mm; orifice basal; staminode cordiform-ovoid, deltoid, lance-ovoid, or ovoid-oblong.
Parts used: Roots.
Phytochemistry: The active constituents are soluble in alcoholic extract of the plant and is known as cyprepedin. The plant is reported to contain 1-4 phenanthrenequinone known as cypripedin.
Actions: Antispasmodic, diaphoretic, hypnotic, nervine, sedative, tonic. The plant is used as substitute for Valeriana officinalis L. although it is inferior.
Therapeutics: Diabetes, diarrhea, dysentery, paralysis, convalescence, impotence and malnutrition.

*Dactylorhiza hatagirea* (D.Don) Soo.

Syn: *Orchis latifolia* L.

Common name: Salampanja, Marsh orchis, salep orchid.
Ayurvedic name: Munjataka.
Distribution: Western Himalayas, Afghanistan and Iran.
Botany: *Dactylorhiza hatagirea* is a terrestrial orchid with fleshy tuberous roots. Tubers are slightly flattened, palmately lobed. Stem is usually 30–50 cm tall, leafy and with few sheathing scales in the lower portion. Leaves are erect, oblong-lanceolate, 7–15 cm long, obtuse and with a sheathing base. Flowers are pink-purple, crowded in terminal, spicate racemes.
Parts used: Roots.
Phytochemistry: Mucilage, starch, glucoside: loroglossin, albumen, volatile oil and ash. Five new compounds known as dactylorhins A-E and two natural compounds known as dactyloses A-B have been reported from plants growing in Nepal.
Actions: Aphrodisiac, expectorant and nervine tonic.
Therapeutics: Diabetes, diarrhea, dysentery, paralysis, convalescence, impotence and malnutrition.
Dendrobium macraei Auct
Syn: Ephemerantha macraei (Lindl.) Hunt et Sunmeh, Flickingeria nodosa (Dalz.) Seiden f.
Ayurvedic name: Jivanti, Jeva jevaniya, saka shreshtha, yasasvini, jiva bhadra.
Distribution: The Himalayas.
Botany: An air plant, growing on jabmul tree, much branching, stems long, pendulous and knotty, with many oblong pseudo bulbs, leaf one, red sessile and long. The flowers are white, with a yellow lip 3 or 4 inches in diameter and fragrant.
Parts used: Tubers.
Phytochemistry: α and β jibantic acid and alkaloid: jebantine.
Actions: Tonic.
Therapeutics: General debility.

Dendrobium nobile Lindl.
Syn: Dendrobium lindleyanum, Dendrobium coerulescens.
Distribution: The Himalayas and China.
Phytochemistry: mucilage, alkaloid: dendrobine, 1–4: phenanthrenequinone: denbinobine. Recently gigantol has been reported from methanolic extract of the plant growing in Japan. A bibenzyl compound, moscatilin has been isolated from the storage stem of the plant.
Actions: Antiphlogistic, pectoral, sialogogue, stomachic and tonic.
Therapeutics: In Vietnam the plant is used in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis, general debility, flatulence, dyspepsia, reduced salivation, parched and thirsty mouth, night sweats, fever and anorexia.
Pre-clinical studies: Anti-mutagenic.

Eulophia nuda Lindl.
Syn: Eulophia dabia (D.Don) Hochr.
Common name: Whitton root, Salep.
Ayurvedic name: Mankand.
Distribution: The Himalayas.
Botany: The tubers, conical, surrounded with circular marks. The remains of leaflets are yellowish white or of a green color.
Parts used: Tubers.
Phytochemistry: Phenanthrenes: chief is nudol.
Actions: Demulcent and anthemnintic.
Therapeutics: Worm infestation and scrofula.

**Eulophia campestris Wall. Ex Stapf**

Distribution: The Himalayas.
Botany: The tubers, conical, surrounded with circular marks. The remains of leaflets are yellowish white or of a green color.
Parts used: Tubers.
Phytochemistry: Mucilage.
Actions: Demulcent and anthemnintic.
Therapeutics: Worm infestation and scrofula.

**Habenaria edgeworthii Hook.f. ex Collett.**

Ayurvedic names: Riddhi, Laksmi, Mangala, Rathanga, Risisrista, Saravajanpriya, Siddhi, Sukha, Vasu and Yuga.
Distribution: E. Asia—The Himalayas. In dry grassy slopes, field borders upto 2800m (26).
Botany: Stem: 30 to 60 cm. high, leafy, stout. Leaves-Ovate, oblanceolate, 4–10 cm long acute, acuminate thick, upper leaves gradually smaller, nerves 5–7, base sheathing. Flowering spike- 7 cm to 25 cm long bearing many flowers. Flowers- Yellow-green 1 to 1.5 cm across with oblanceolate acute bracts, the lower shorter, the upper longer; than the ovary sepals green, pubescent, the margins slightly fringed; petals yellow thick, erect; lip yellow longer than the sepals concave narrowing to a long strap shaped limb, spur about twice the length of ovary, yellowish-green curving upwards with tip curved down.
Ayurvedic dynamics: Sweet in taste and pacifies vata and pitta but aggravates kapha.
Actions: Cooling and spermopiotic.
Therapeutics: Diseases of the blood.
Parts used: Leaves and roots.
Substitute: *Pueraria tuberosa* DC.

**Habenaria intermedia D.Don**

Syn: *Habenaria arietina* H.f.
English name: Wild orchid.
Ayurvedic names: Riddhi, Laksmi, Mangala, Rathanga, Risisrista, Saravajanpriya, Siddhi, Sukha, Vasu and Yuga.

Distribution: E. Asia—The Himalayas. In dry grassy slopes, field borders upto 2600 m. Botany: Erect, 25-60 cm high, terete, robust leafy. Leaves-Scattered usually 5, nerved ovate-lanceolate acuminate, cordate at the base. Inflorescence: 2–6 flowered. Flowers: 5 cm across white or greenish-white few, distant. Bracts leaf like lanceolate, acuminate, equal or more than ovary. Sepals persistent, 20–25 mm long, green, spreading tips reflexed, upper one white inside. Petals white, 5-nerved. Lip 3–lobed, longer than sepals, green spur 5–6 cm stout, longer than ovary more or less curved. Side lobes deeply fringed.

Ayurvedic dynamics: Sweet in taste and pacifies vata and pitta but aggravates kapha.

Actions: Cooling and spermopiotic.

Therapeutics: Diseases of the blood.

Parts used: Leaves and roots.

Substitute: Pueraria tuberosa DC.

Habenaria pectinata D.Don

Distribution: The Himalayas.

Common name: Safed musli.

Therapeutics: The leaves are crushed and applied in snake bites. Tubers mixed with condiments are used in arthritis.

Malaxis muscifera (Lindl.) Kuntze

Ayurvedic names: Jivaka, Chiranjivi, Dirghayu, Harsanga, Ksveda, Kurchasira, Pranda, Sringaka and Svadu.

Distribution: The Himalayas 1850 m to 2300 m from Himachal Pradesh to Arunachal Pradesh.

Botany: Microstylis muscifera is a terrestrial, robust herb, up to 25 cm high. Stem tending to be pseudobulbous at base. Leaves —usually 3 may be more, 5–10 cm ovate-lanceolate, acute with prominent veins and light green. Flowers- shortly stalked about 10 mm in diameter, yellowish-green with purple centre. Sepals oblong, 2 lateral shorter than the dorsal, margins recurved. Petals linear longer than sepals, margin recurved. Lip-slightly convex, tip notched or bilobulate, auricles straight and slightly over lapping.

Phytochemistry: No information.

Ayurvedic dynamics: Sweet in taste, cold in potency, pacifies vata and aggravates kapha.
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

Actions: Cooling, febrifuge and spermopiotic.
Therapeutics: Bleeding diathesis, burning sensation, fever and phthisis.
Part used: Bulb.
Substitute: *Pueraria tuberosa* DC.

*Malaxis acuminta* D.Don
Ayurvedic names: Rishbhaka, Bandhura, Dhira, Durdhara, Gopati, Indraksa, Kakuda, Matrika, Visani, Vrisa and Vrisnabha.
Distribution: The Himalayas 1800 m to 3500 m eastwards to Sikkim.
Botany: Stem- 3 to 25 cm high with ovoid pseudo bulbs. Leaves- One or two (unequal) 3–10 x 2–4 cm sessile, ovate to ovate-lanceolate obtuse, narrowed at base to sheathing petiole. Inflorescence-10 to 25 cm long. Flowers- 3–4 mm long, pale-yellow-green, bracts lanceolate shorter than ovary sepals broadly lanceolate. Petals liner shorter than sepals. Lip ovate abruptly pointed, margins thickened. Flowering time- July-August. Tuber-round, shining bearing stem giving the shape of a bullock horn having a similar curvature. The taste is slightly bitter with a fat like substance.
Phytochemistry: No information.
Ayurvedic dynamics: Sweet in taste, cold in potency, pacifies *vata* and aggravates *kapha*.
Actions: Cooling, febrifuge and spermopiotic.
Therapeutics: Bleeding diathesis, burning sensation, fever and phthisis.
Part used: Pseudo bulb.
Substitute: *Pueraria tuberosa* DC.

*Orchis laxiflora* Lam.
Syn: *Orchis ensifolia* Vill.
Common name: Oriental Salep, Marsh Orchis.
Distribution: South Europe, North Africa and West Asia.
Botany: *Orchis laxiflora* is a terrestrial orchid with fleshy tuberous roots. Tubers are slightly flattened. Stem contains sheathing scales in the lower portion. Leaves are erect and oblong-lanceolate. Flowers are dark-purple in spicate racemes.
Phytochemistry: Mucilage.
Actions: Astringent and expectorant.
Therapeutics: Diarrhea, bronchitis and convalescence.
Part used: Bulb.
**Vanda spathulata (L.) Spreng.**
Distribution: Peninsular India and Sri Lanka.
Therapeutics: Powdered flowers are used in the treatment of consumption, asthma and mania.

**Vanda tessellata (Roxb.) Hook. Ex Don**

Syn: *Vanda roxburghii* R.Br.
Common name: Vanda.
Ayurvedic names: Atirasa and Rasna.
Distribution: India, Sri Lanka and Myanmar.
Botany: *Vanda tessellata* is an epiphytic orchid, 30–60 cm high, with leafy stem. Leaves are thickly coriaceous, recurved, plicate, obtuse keeled. Flowers are greenish yellow, mottled with brown on the mid lobe of lip with purple caruncles.
Phytochemistry: Alkaloid, glucoside, bitter principle, tannins, resin, saponin, sitosterols and coloring matter. A glycoside (melianin) and a complex withanolide have been reported from plants growing in Pakistan.
Actions: Aphrodisiac, analgesic and nervine tonic.
Therapeutics: Paste of leaves is used as application in fevers. It is ingredient of *Rasna Panchaka Quatha*, the Ayurvedic formulation used in the treatment of arthritis and rheumatism. Expressed juice of the leaves is used in the treatment of otitis media. The root is used as an antidote against scorpion stings and as a remedy for bronchitis.
Parts used: Whole plant.
Pre-clinical studies: Aphrodisiac, anti-inflammatory, anti-arthritic, antimicrobial, and wound-healing.

**Further reading**
Lu TJ. 2005. Water-soluble polysaccharides with potential Immuno-modulating activities of Anoectochilus formosanus Hayata. Fifth International Conference of Food Science and Technology, Wuxi, China.


Chapter 14

Salacia sp. Potential Hypoglycemic Plants

14.1 Introduction

_Salacia_ species (Celasteraceae) including _S. chinensis_, _S. reticulata_ and _S. oblonga_, are used as antidiabetic agents in traditional systems of medicine like Ayurveda and Unani. The plants have been used in India, Japan and Korea to treat high blood glucose levels. Pre-clinical investigations have demonstrated the anti-obesity activity of Salacia. Large-scale clinical-studies are warranted for the potential use of _Salacia_ species in treating diabetes, while pre-clinical research and isolated clinical trials have, thus far, supported this claim. This chapter summarizes the pharmacological investigations carried out on various species of _Salacia_ with respect to diabetes.

14.2 _Salacia chinensis_ Linn. Syn: _S. prinoides_ DC.

_S. chinensis_ is commonly studied among plants of the genus _Salacia_. It is an erect or straggling tree or a woody climbing shrub found along seashores and river banks as well as in forests. The plants bear flowers in clusters and small single seeded, red fruits having an edible pulp.

Proanthocyanidins has been reported from _S. chinensis_. Two new friedelane-type triterpenes: salasones D and E (Fig. 14.1), a new norfriedelane-type triterpene: salaquinone B (Fig. 14.2), and a new polyacylated eudesmane-type sesquiterpene: salasol B (Fig. 14.3), were isolated from the stems of _S. chinensis_. Some norfriedelane-type triterpene, lignan, and catechin constituents were found to show an antioxidant activity.

Three new friedelane-type triterpenes called salasones A, B, and C (Fig. 14.4), a new norfriedelane-type triterpene, salaquinone A (Fig. 14.5), and a new acylated eudesmane-type sesquiterpene, salasol A (Fig. 14.6), were reported from 80% aqueous methanolic extract of the stems of _S.
Salacia sp. Potential Hypoglycemic Plants

*Salacia chinensis* collected in Thailand. 3β, 22β-dihydroxyolean-12-en-29-oic acid, tingenone, tingenine B, regeol A, triptocalline A, and mangiferin, showing an inhibitory effect on rat lens aldose reductase were also isolated.

Fig. 14.1 Structure of Salasone D and Salasone E.

Fig. 14.2 Structure of Salaquinone B.

Fig. 14.3 Structure of Salasol B.
Fig. 14.4 Structure of Salasones A, B, and C.

Fig. 14.5 Structure of Salaquinone A.

Fig. 14.6 Structure of Salasol A.
Recently megastigmane glycosides have been reported from the leaves of *S. chinensis*. Seven new megastigmane glycosides: foliasalaciosides E 1-3, F, G, H, and I, were recently isolated from the leaves of *S. chinensis* Linn. collected from Thailand. New triterpene constituents, foliasalacins A (1)-A (4), B (1)-B (3), and C, have been isolated from the leaves of *S. chinensis*.

In Ayurveda, the plant is known as Saptchakra. In addition to Ayurveda, the plant is used as a remedy for type 2 diabetes in the Siddha system of medicine. A clinical study in 1984 reported the usefulness of *S. chinensis* based formulation in diabetes mellitus. Kadal, a proprietary Siddha medicine comprising of roots and bark of *S. chinensis* and Triphala were given to 25 type 2 diabetes mellitus patients. Kadal was administered in a dose of 500 mg twice a day and Triphala was administered at 2.5 g thrice a day with water for a period of 4 mon. They reported a hypoglycemic effect of the formulation.

An animal study reported potent anti-hyperglycemic effect of methanolic extract from the stems of *S. chinensis*, in oral sucrose or maltose-loaded rats. The extract also demonstrated inhibition of alpha-glucosidase and rat lens aldose reductase, as well as nitric oxide production from lipopolysaccharide-activated mouse peritoneal macrophage, and radical scavenging activities. Salacinol was identified as the alpha-glucosidase inhibitory principle of the extracts.

### 14.3 Salacia reticulata Wight

*S. reticulata* is a climbing perennial woody plant growing wild in South India and in North Sri Lanka. Its roots and stems are been used in Ayurveda to relieve dry mouth. Mangiferin has been isolated from the root bark of *S. reticulata*. A novel nortriterpenoid aldehyde called salacenonal (Fig. 14.7) has been reported from *S. reticulata*. Kotalanol having potential natural alpha-glucosidase inhibiting activity was isolated from the roots and stems of *S. reticulata* through bioassay-guided separation. Kotalanol was found to show more potent inhibitory activity against sucrose than salacinol and acarbose.

![Fig. 14.7 Structure of Salacenonal.](image-url)
A study reported that lipase inhibitory and lipolytic activities have mild antiobesity effects of hot water-soluble extract from the roots of *S. reticulata* and its polyphenolic constituents in rats. A randomized single center double blind crossover trial, studied the efficacy of an herbal tea containing *S. reticulata* (Kothala Himbutu tea) in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Fifty-one patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus for longer than 6 mon and with evidence of stable glycemic control over the preceding 6 mon (as assessed by HbA1C) participated in the study. They were randomized to receive a standard preparation of Kothala Himbutu tea for 3 mon followed by placebo in similar tea bags for a further 3 mon (n = 28) or in reverse order (n = 23). All patients received detailed advice on diet, exercise and lifestyle modification. HbA1C was measured at recruitment, at 3 mon and on completion of the study at 6 mon. Liver and renal functions were assessed biochemically at baseline, at 3 and 6 mon and adverse events were recorded. There were no significant differences between the two groups in age, body mass index, male/female ratio, and glycemic control and baseline laboratory tests. All patients completed both arms of the trial. The HbA1C at the end of drug treatment was significantly lower than after treatment with placebo.

A mixture of the aqueous extract of *S. reticulata* and cyclodextrin has been reported to reduce the accumulation of visceral fat mass in mice and male Sprague-Dawley rats with high-fat diet-induced obesity.

Recently a polyhydroxylated cyclic 13-membered sulfoxide (Fig. 14.8) was isolated from an aqueous extract of *S. reticulata*. The alpha-glucosidase inhibitory activity was much greater than the inhibitory activity of salacinol and kotalanol, previously isolated from *S. reticulata*. The same authors reported isolation and alpha-glucosidase inhibitory activity of a novel 13-membered ring thiocyclitol from an aqueous extract of *S. reticulata*. The inhibitory activity was investigated by maltose- and sucrose-loading on Wistar rats.

![Fig. 14.8 Structure of polyhydroxylated cyclic 13-membered sulfoxide.](image-url)
14.4 *Salacia oblonga* Wall.

In Japan *S. oblonga* has been sold as a food supplement for several years. *S. oblonga* plants grow in limited regions of India and Sri Lanka, and it is not yet well known in the U.S.

A study reported two biologically active principles from petroleum ether extract of the root bark of *S. oblonga*. Two principles demonstrated about 60% and 76% hypoglycemic potency of an equal dose of tolbutamide (250 mg/kg) in albino rats.

It was demonstrated that the aqueous methanolic extract of the roots of *S. oblonga* inhibited the increase in serum glucose level in sucrose- and maltose-loaded rats. The water-soluble and ethyl acetate-soluble portions from the aqueous methanolic extract showed inhibitory activities on alpha-glucosidase and aldose reductase, respectively. From the water-soluble portion, potent alpha-glucosidase inhibitors, salacinol and kotalanol, were isolated, together with nine sugar related components, while a new friedelane-type triterpene, kotalagenin 16-acetate, was isolated from the ethyl acetate-soluble portion along with known diterpenes and triterpenes. The structure of kotalagenin 16-acetate was elucidated on the basis of physicochemical evidence. The principal components from this natural medicine were examined in terms of inhibitory activity on aldose reductase, and the diterpene and triterpene constituents, including the new kotalagenin 16-acetate, were found to be responsible components for the inhibitory activity on aldose reductase.

![Fig. 14.9 Structure of possible hypoglycemic principles of *Salacia* sp.](image-url)
A clinical study evaluated the effect of an herbal extract of *S. oblonga* on postprandial glycemia and insulinemia in patients with type 2 diabetes after ingestion of a high-carbohydrate meal. Sixty-six patients with diabetes were studied in this randomized, double-blinded crossover study. During a fasting stage, subjects consumed 1 of the following 3 meals: a standard liquid control meal, a control meal + 240 mg *S. oblonga* extract, and a control meal + 480 mg *S. oblonga* extract. Both doses of the Salacia extract significantly lowered the postprandial positive area under the glucose curve (14% for the 240 mg extract and 22% for the 480 mg extract) and the adjusted peak glucose response (19% for the lower dose and 27% for the higher dose of extract) to the control meal. In addition, both doses of the salacia extract significantly decreased the postprandial insulin response, lowering both the positive area under the insulin curve and the adjusted peak insulin response (14% and 9%, respectively, for the 240 mg extract; 19% and 12%, respectively, for the 480 mg extract) in comparison with the control meal.

Scientists investigated the effect of the water extract of *S. oblonga* on obesity and diabetes-associated cardiac hypertrophy and discussed the role of modulation of cardiac angiotensin II type 1 receptor (AT(1)) expression in the effect. *S. oblonga* 100 mg/kg was given orally to male Zucker diabetic fatty rats for 7 wk. At the end-point of the treatment, the hearts and left ventricles were weighed, cardiomyocyte cross-sectional areas were measured, and cardiac gene profiles were analyzed. On the other hand, angiotensin II-stimulated embryonic rat heart-derived H9c2 cells and neonatal rat cardiac fibroblasts were pretreated with water extract of *S. oblonga* and one of its prominent components mangiferin, respectively. Atrial natriuretic peptide, mRNA expression and protein synthesis and [(3)H] thymidine incorporation were determined.

*S. oblonga* treated Zucker diabetic fatty rats showed less cardiac hypertrophy (decrease in weights of the hearts and left ventricles and reduced cardiomyocyte cross-sectional areas). *S. oblonga* treatment
suppressed cardiac over expression of Atrial natriuretic peptide, brain natriuretic peptide and AT (1) mRNAs and AT (1) protein in Zucker diabetic fatty rats. Aqueous extract of *S. oblonga* (50–100 microg/ml) and mangiferin (25 micromol) suppressed angiotensin II-induced ANP mRNA over expression and protein synthesis in H9c2 cells. They also inhibited angiotensin II-stimulated [(3) H] thymidine incorporation by cardiac fibroblasts. The findings demonstrate that *S. oblonga* decreases cardiac hypertrophy in Zucker diabetic fatty rats, at least in part by inhibiting cardiac AT(1) over expression.

### 14.5 Salacia as peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-alpha activator

In a present study, water extract of *S. oblonga* (100, 300 and 900mg/kg/day/p.o., over a 28 d period) elicited dose-related increases in liver weight (LW) by 1.6%, 13.4% and 42.5%, respectively, and in the ratio of LW to body weight by 8.8%, 16.7% and 40.2%, respectively, in male rats. These effects were less pronounced in females. Water extract of *S. oblonga* selectively increased liver mass in male rats but Sudan red staining was not different, which indicates that hepatic lipid accumulation was similar in both genders. However, water extract of *S. oblonga* even at the highest dosage did not influence serum ALT and AST activities in male or female rats. Moreover, water extract of *S. oblonga* was found to activate peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-alpha and acylCoA oxidase mRNA expression. Thus, water extract of *S. oblonga* dependent peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-alpha activation may precede the development of the gender difference in hepatic hypertrophy.

### 14.6 Toxicity

**Reproductive toxicity**

A study determined the effects of the *S. reticulata* root extract on the reproductive outcome of normal Wistar rats (250–260 g) when administered orally (10 g/kg) during early (d 1–7) and mid- (d 7–14) pregnancy. The root extract significantly (P<0.05) enhanced post-implantation losses (control vs treatment: early pregnancy, 4.7 ± 2.4 vs 49.3 ± 13%; mid-pregnancy, 4.7 ± 2.4 vs 41.7 ± 16.1%). Gestational length was unaltered but the pups born had a low birth weight (P<0.05) (early pregnancy, 6.8 ± 0.1 vs 5.3 ± 0.1 g; mid-pregnancy, 6.8 ± 0.1 vs 5.0 ± 0.1 g) and low birth index (P<0.05) (early pregnancy, 95.2 ± 2.4 vs 50.7 ± 12.9%; mid-pregnancy, 95.2 ± 2.4 vs 58.3 ± 16.1%), fetal survival ratio (P<0.05) (early pregnancy, 95.2 ± 2.4 vs 50.7 ± 12.9; mid-pregnancy, 95.2 ± 2.4 vs 58.3 ± 16.1), and viability index (P<0.05)
(early pregnancy, 94.9 ± 2.6 vs 49.5 ± 12.5%; mid-pregnancy, 94.9 ± 2.6 vs 57.1 ± 16.1%). However, the root extract was non-teratogenic.

**Genotoxicity and subchronic toxicity**

Another study investigated the genotoxicity of a *S. oblonga* root extract using the standard battery of tests (reverse mutation assay; chromosomal aberrations assay; mouse micronucleus assay) recommended by US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for food ingredients. *S. oblonga* was determined not to be genotoxic under the conditions of the reverse mutation assay and mouse micronucleus assay, and weakly positive for the chromosomal aberrations assay. Continuing further studies, Flammang et al., 2007, investigated the toxicity of a *S. oblonga* root extract in a subchronic 90-d feeding study in rats. An in vivo-in vitro rat peripheral blood lymphocyte chromosomal aberrations assay was added at termination of the subchronic rat study to examine cultured lymphocytes for possible chromosomal aberration induction. The present study results indicate that aqueous extract of *S. oblonga* was negative for the induction of chromosomal aberrations in cultured rat peripheral blood lymphocytes after 90 consecutive days of treatment. The no observable adverse effect level was determined to be 2,500 mg/kg/day, p.o. following subchronic administrations to rats.

**14.7 Doses of Salacia based preparations**

Although no authentic information is available regarding the dosage, a typical dose of *Salacia* based preparations is 2.5 to 5.0 grams daily of the whole herb, or a comparable amount as extract.

All the three species of Salacia have demonstrated alpha-glucosidase inhibiting activity like acarbose, with salacinol and kotalanol, as possible active principles. These studies have provided insights into potential protective and anti-obesity roles of Salacia species also. Some animal studies have demonstrated that Salacia might have antidiabetic action like conventional PPAR-gamma activators. Clinical trials have also reported efficacy of Salacia species in the treatment of diabetes mellitus. Toxicity data shows this herb is devoid of genotoxic and teratogenic effect but it should be avoided during pregnancy.

**References and further reading**


Chapter 15

Ethnopharmacology of
Taraxacum officinale Weber

15.1 Introduction

Complementary and Alternative Systems of Medicine (CAM) viz. Ayurveda, Siddha, and Traditional Chinese Medicine, have become more popular in recent years. Medicinal herbs and extracts prepared from them are widely used in the treatment of liver diseases like hepatitis, cirrhosis, and loss of appetite. A number of reviews have focused on the therapeutic utility and adverse effects of herbal products, particularly hepatotoxicity.

Silymarin (flavanolignan mixture from Silybum marianum Linn.), daphnoretin (coumarin from Wilkstroemia indica), kuitkin or picrosides and kutkosides (iridoid glycosides from Picrorhiza kurroa Royle), glycyrrhizin (triterpene saponin from Glycyrrhiza glabra Linn.), schizandrin (lignans from Schizandra chinensis), andrographolide (diterpene lactone from Andrographis paniculata Nees), and lignans (phyllanthin from Phyllanthus niruri), are proven hepatoprotective phyto-constituents, as they have shown genuine utility in experimental and clinical studies.

More than 700 mono and polyherbal preparations in the form of decoction, tincture, tablets and capsules from more than 100 plants are in clinical use. Keeping in mind the non-availability of a standard hepatoprotective agent in synthetic medicine and the discovery of silymarin as hepatoprotective agent from natural source, we need to initiate screening for herbals with documented effect on the liver. Among several plants used for liver diseases, T. officinale is well recognized in Complementary and Alternative Medicine (CAM). The folk medicines of China, India and Russia have recognized T. officinale as a liver tonic. Traditional Chinese Medicine combines T. officinale with other herbs to treat hepatitis.
15.2 Dandelion and traditional medicine

The genus name *Taraxacum* is derived from the Greek word ‘taraxos’, meaning ‘disorder’ and ‘akos’ meaning ‘remedy’. As a medicinal plant, *T. officinale* has been considered to be an aperient or mild laxative, diuretic, stimulant, stomachic, tonic, and detoxicant. Tea prepared from *T. officinale* has been used against fever, insomnia, jaundice, rheumatism, eczema and other skin diseases, and constipation. *T. officinale* and other *Taraxacum* species have also been used against warts, cancers, and tumors.

15.3 Phytochemistry

*Carotenoids*: Lutein (Fig. 15.2) and violaxanthin (Fig. 15.3).
**Coumarins:** Esculetin (Fig. 15.4) and scopoletin (Fig. 15.5).

![Esculin](image1)

**Flavonoids:** Apigenin-7-glucoside (Fig. 15.6), luteolin-7-glucoside (Fig. 15.7), isorhamnetin 3-glucoside (Fig. 15.8), luteolin-7-diglucoside (Fig. 15.9), quercetin-7-glucoside (Fig. 15.10), quercetin (Fig. 15.11), luteolin (Fig. 15.12), rutin (Fig. 15.13) and chrysoeriol (Fig. 15.14).

![Apigenin-7-glucoside](image2)

![Luteolin-7-glucoside](image3)

![Isorhamnetin 3-glucoside](image4)

![Luteolin-7-diglucoside](image5)
Fig. 15.10 Quercetin-7-glucoside.

Fig. 15.11 Quercetin.

Fig. 15.12 Luteolin.

Fig. 15.13 Rutin.

Fig. 15.14 Chrysoeriol.
**Phenolic acids:** Caffeic, chlorogenic, chicoric (Fig. 5.193), dicaffeoyltartaric acid and \( \rho \)-hydroxyphenylacetic acids.

**Polysaccharides:** Glucans and mannans and inulin.

**Sesquiterpene lactones:** The plant is a rich source of sesquiterpene lactones or bitter principles. Taraxacin or taraxinic acid or lactucoprin (Fig. 15.15), lactucin (Fig. 15.16) and cichorin (Fig. 15.17) are chief bitter principles and belong to the guaianolide class. Taraxacin in concentrated solutions, forms precipitates with a number of alkaloidal reagents. The plant contains a crystalline substance, taraxacerine or taraxaceron, which is reported to be bitter resin. Taraxacoserine, a type of acylated gamma-butyrolactone glycoside has been reported from the plant. Other sesquiterpene lactones are of the germacranoide type including 11\( \beta \), 13-dihydrolactucin (Fig. 15.18), ixerin D (Fig. 15.19), ainslioside taraxinic acid \( \beta \)-glucopyranosyl, taraxinic acid 1\( ' \)-glucosyl ester, and 11, 13-dihydataraxinic acid 1\( ' \)-glucoside. Eudesmanolides including tetrahydroridentin-B (Fig. 15.20) and taraxacolide-O-\( \beta \)-glucopyranoside are reported. Recently, a cyanogenic glycoside, prunasin has been reported from the extract of the plant. Phenylpropanoid glycosides: dihydroconiferin (Fig. 15.21), syringin (Fig. 15.22) dihydroxyngin (Fig. 15.23) have been reported.

![Fig. 15.15 Lactucoprinin.](image)

![Fig. 15.16 Lactucin.](image)

![Fig. 15.17 Chichorin.](image)

![Fig. 15.18 11\( \beta \), 13-dihydrolactucin.](image)

![Fig. 15.19 Ixerin D.](image)

![Fig. 15.20 Tetrahydroridentin.](image)
Sterols: Taraxasterol (Fig. 15.24), ψ-taraxasterol, (Fig. 15.25) and homotaraxasterol, β-sitosterol (Fig. 15.26), stigmastanol (Fig. 15.27), campesterol (Fig. 15.28).
**Triterpenes:** α-amyrin (Fig. 15.29), β-amyrin (Fig. 15.30), lupeol (Fig. 15.31), taraxol, taraxaserol, and cycloartenol (Fig. 15.32) are present in the roots. 3β-hydroxylup-18(19)-ene-21-one (Fig. 15.33) has been reported from fresh roots of the plant. Arnidiol (Fig. 15.34) and faradiol (Fig. 15.35) have been reported.
Other: Lettucenin A (Fig. 15.36), a serine proteinase: taraxalisin, amino acids, choline, mucilage, and pectin.

15.4 Pharmacology

The bitter compounds in the leaves and root help stimulate digestion and are mild laxatives. These bitter principles also increase bile production in the gallbladder and bile flow from the liver. Oral administration of extracts from the roots of *T. officinale* has been shown to act as a chologogue, increasing the flow of bile. In German studies, dandelion leaf extracts increased bile secretion by 40% in rats. In French studies, giving dogs a decoction of fresh dandelion root doubled their bile output. In two Chinese studies of animals with gastric ulcers, gastric metaplasia and hyperplasia, dandelion-containing herbal combinations led to significant histologic improvement.
This chapter reviews the effect of *T. officinale* on the hepatobiliary apparatus and gastrointestinal system. The extracts of *T. officinale* have demonstrated antitumor, hypoglycemic, diuretic, antibacterial and nitric oxide regeneration activity. We need to focus on other pharmacological investigations particularly antioxidant activity and anti-inflammatory activities, which might explain the use of *T. officinale* in liver diseases.

**In vivo**

*Anti-inflammatory activity*

Extracts of *T. officinale* have an inhibitory effect on tumor necrosis factor-alpha production from rat astrocytes. Sesquiterpene glucosides isolated from fractionation of the extract of *T. officinale* have anti-leukotriene activity. Luteolin and luteolin-7-O-glucoside from the flower of *T. officinale* have a suppressive effect on iNOS and COX-2 in RAW264.7 cells. *T. officinale* has been reported to have a protective effect against cholecystokinin-induced acute pancreatitis in rats.

*Antioxidant*

Hydro-alcoholic acid of *T. officinale* roots demonstrated antioxidant activity in rats. Extract of *T. officinale*, in the dose of 100 mg/kg, p.o., improved the superoxide dimutase, catalase, glutathione, and peroxidase levels decreased by CCl4 treatment.

*Cholretic*

Bile secretion was doubled in dogs by a decoction of fresh roots (equivalent to 5 g dried plant); a similar activity has been observed for rats.

**In vitro**

*Antioxidant*

Water and ethyl acetate fractions of *T. officinale* flower extract showed antioxidant activities in a stable 2, 2-diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl radical model and reduced the breakage of super coiled DNA strand induced by both non-site-specific and site-specific hydroxyl radical. Oxidation of structured phosphatidylcholine liposome induced by peroxyl radical was reduced in the presence of both water and ethyl acetate fractions of the extract. Luteolin and luteolin 7-glucoside were identified as potential antioxidant agents.

Flower extract of *T. officinale* resulted in oxidation of linoleic acid emulsion and suppressed superoxide and hydroxyl radical. The antioxidant activity of flower extract of *T. officinale* against Diphenylpicryl-hydrazyl and a synergistic effect with α-tocopherol were attributed to the reducing activity of flavonoids and coumaric acid derivatives present in the
extract. The extract further inhibited peroxyl-radical-induced intracellular oxidation of RAW264.7 cells with range of concentrations.

15.5 Clinical studies

**Chronic colitis**

A study reported the efficacy of polyherbal formulation containing *T. officinale* in chronic pain associated with colitis. As multiple herbs were used, and this study was not well-designed or reported, the effects of dandelion are not clear.

**Hepatitis B**

One human study, reported improved liver function in people with hepatitis B after taking a combination herbal preparation containing *T. officinale*, *Artemisia capillaries* Thunb (Asteraceae), *Taraxacum mongolicum* Hand-Mazz. (Asteraceae), *Plantago ovata* Forssk. (Plantaginaceae), *Cephalanoplos segetum* (Bunge) Kitam (Asteraceae), *Hedyotis diffusa* Willd. (Rubiaceae), *Chrysanthemum indicum* Linn. (Asteraceae), *Smilax glabra* Roxb. (Smilaceae), *Astragalus membranaceus* (Fisch.ex Link.) Bunge (Fabaceae), *Salvia miltiorrhiza* Bunge. (Lamiaceae), *Polygonum orientalis* L. (Polygalaceae), *Paonia alba* L. (Ranunculaceae), and *Polygonatum sibiricum* F. Daelaroche. (Convallariaceae). Since polyherbal preparation was used in the study, the possible benefits of *T. officinale* need to be explored.

Studies have indicated that chicoric acid inhibits the penetration of viruses in cells. Chicoric acid also acts as an antioxidant by preventing the oxidation of collagen and cells. Chlorogenic acid is cholagogue; its regular ingestion helps the flow of bile and thus reduces the adverse effects of bile stagnation. While chlorogenic acids are not the only compounds that serve well as chologogues, the evidence for their effectiveness is by far the strongest. Both chicoric and chlorogenic have an action on the heaptobiliary apparatus and therefore the role in extracts of *T. officinale* needs further exploration.

Further reading


Ethnopharmacology of Taraxacum officinale Weber


Chapter 16

Ethnopharmacology of Acanthus ilicifolius Linn.

16.1 Introduction

Acanthus ilicifolius (sea holly) is found in tropical Asia and Africa, from Malaya to Polynesia. It is a viny shrub or tall herb, up to 1.5 m high, scarcely woody, bushy, with very dense growth. Shallow tap roots, but occasionally stilt roots are conspicuous. Leaf simple, opposite, decussate, cauline, exstipulate, petiole short, flattened, glabrous, pulvinous to sheathing base. Flower bisexual, typically zygomorphic, complete, erect, sessile, hypogynous. Fruit 1 cm green and 2.5–2.0 cm long, kidney shaped 4 seed drupe, Seed 0.5–1.0 cm long.

16.2 Phytochemistry

Alkaloid, acanthicifoline has been reported. Two new cyclolignan glycosides, (+)-lyoniresinol 3a-O-b-D-galactopyranosyl-(1→6)-b-D-glucopyranoside and (+)-lyoniresinol 2a-O-b-D-galactopyranosyl-3a-O-b -D-glucopyranoside have been reported from aerial parts of A. ilicifolius. A phenylethanoid glycoside (ilicifolioside A) and an aliphatic alcohol glycoside (ilicifolioside B) have been isolated from the aerial parts.

Two lignan glycosides, (+)-lyoniresino 1 3a-[2-(3, 5-dimethoxy-4-hydroxy)-benzoy]-O-beta-glucopyranoside, and dihydroxymethylbis (3, 5-dimethoxy-4-hydroxyphenyl) tetrahydrofuran-9(or 9')-O-beta-glucopyranoside have been isolated from the aerial parts. 11-epoxymegastigmane glycoside and megastigmane glucosides (roseoside) have been reported from A. ilicifolius growing in China.

2-benzoxazolinone and blepharin have been reported from plants growing in Vietnam. A new coumaric acid derivative acancifoliuside, acteoside, isoacteoside, acanthaminoside, (+)-lyoniresinol 3a-O-beta-
glucopyranoside, (-)-lyoniresinol, and alpha-amyrin, have been isolated from the methanolic extract of the leaves of *A. ilicifolius*.

![Fig. 16.1 Structure of Acanthicifoline.](image)

### 16.3 Traditional Medicinal Uses

**Malaysia:** The leaves of *A. ilicifolius* are used to treat rheumatism, neuralgia and poison arrow wounds. It is widely believed by mangrove dwellers that chewing the leaves protects against snake bite.

**Malay:** The pounded seeds of *A. ilicifolius* and *A. ebracteatus* are used to treat boils, and the juice of the leaves to prevent alopecia. Both species are also used to treat urolithiasis.

**India:** In Ayurveda, the plant is known as Sahachara. In India the drug is considered to be astringent and makes a good nerve tonic, expectorant, and stimulant. He says that the root is expectorant, and is used in coughs and asthma. The root, boiled in milk, is largely used in leucorrhoea and general debility. The Siamese and Indo-Chinese consider the roots to be cordial and attenuant, and useful in paralysis and asthma. The tender shoots and leaves are used in India for bites. In Goa, the leaves, which abound in mucilage, are used as an emollient fomentation in rheumatism and neuralgia.

**Thailand:** Water extracted from the bark is used to treat colds and dermatitis. Ground fresh bark is used as an antiseptic. Tea brewed from the leaves relieves pain and purifies the blood.

### 16.4 Pharmacology

**Anti-inflammatory**

The methanolic fraction of *A. ilicifolius* leaf extract produced significant inhibition of rat paw oedema, when administered both prior to and after carrageenan administration, in a manner similar to BW755C a synthetic cyclooxygenase and lipoxygenase inhibitor. The extract decreased protein exudation and leukocyte migration in the peritoneal fluid, thereby indicating its effectiveness towards inhibiting peritoneal inflammation. It also produced significant inhibition of cyclooxygenase (1 and 2) and...
lipoxygenase activity. Preincubation of the extract inhibited the production of proinflammatory cytokines in lipopolysaccharide stimulated peripheral blood mononuclear cells.

The methanolic fraction of the extract was also found to possess significant free radical scavenging activity. The extract on intraperitoneal administration augmented the endogenous antioxidant status, as evident from the significant increase of ferric reducing ability of plasma and total peroxyl radical trapping activity of plasma.

**Anti-osteoporotic activity**
The effects of the compounds isolated from *A. ilicifolius* on the function of osteoblastic MC3T3-E1 cells were tested. Acteoside, isoacteoside, and (+)-lyoniresinol 3a-O-beta-glucopyranoside (30 microM) increased the growth and differentiation of osteoblasts significantly (*P < 0.05*), indicating that *A. ilicifolius* leaves may help prevent osteoporosis.

**Hepatoprotective**
The alcoholic extract of *A. ilicifolius* leaves inhibited the formation of oxygen derived free radicals *in vitro* with IC (50) of 550 microg/ml, 2750 microg/ml, 670 microg/ml and 600 microg/ml (Fe (2+)/ascorbate system), 980 microg/ml (Fe (3+)/ADP/ascorbate system) for superoxide radical production, hydroxyl radical generation, nitric oxide radical formation and lipid peroxide formation, respectively. The oral administration of the extract (250 and 500 mg/kg) significantly reduced CCl4 induced hepatotoxicity in rats, as judged from the serum and tissue activity of marker enzymes; glutamate oxaloacetate transaminase, glutamate pyruvate transaminase and alkaline phosphatase. The results were comparable with those obtained with curcumin [100 mg/kg, p.o.].

**Chemo preventive**
A. To investigate the chemo preventive efficacy of *A. ilicifolius* in a transplantable Ehrlich ascites carcinoma (EAC)-bearing murine model, male Swiss albino mice were divided into four groups: Group A was the untreated normal control; Group B was the Ehrlich ascites carcinoma control mice group that received serial, intraperitoneal (ip) inoculations of rapidly proliferating 2 x 10(5) viable Ehrlich ascites carcinoma cells in 0.2 mL of sterile phosphate buffered saline; Group C was the plant extract-treated group that received the aqueous leaf extract of *A. ilicifolius* at a dose of 2.5 mg/kg body weight by single ip injections, once daily for 10, 20 and 30 consecutive days following tumor inoculation (aqueous leaf extract of *A. ilicifolius*); and Group D was the Ehrlich ascites carcinoma + aqueous leaf extract of *A. ilicifolius* treatment group.
The chemo preventive potential of the aqueous leaf extract of *A. ilicifolius* was evaluated in a murine model by studying various biological parameters and genotoxic markers, such as tumor cell count, mean survival of the animals, haematological indices, hepatocellular histology, and immuno-histochemical expression of liver metallothionein protein, sister chromatid exchanges, and DNA alterations. Treatment of the Ehrlich ascites carcinoma-bearing mice with the aqueous leaf extract of *A. ilicifolius* significantly (P < 0.001) reduced viable tumor cell count by 68.34% (228.7 x 10^6 +/-0.53) when compared to Ehrlich ascites carcinoma control mice (72.4 x 10^6 +/-0.49), and restored body and organ weights almost to the normal values. Aqueous leaf extract of *A. ilicifolius* administration also increased (P < 0.001) mean survival of the hosts from 35 +/-3.46 d in Ehrlich ascites carcinoma control mice to 83 +/-2.69 d in Ehrlich ascites carcinoma + aqueous leaf extract of *A. ilicifolius* treated mice.

B. Alcoholic extract of *A. ilicifolius* (250, 500 mg/kg b wt) was found to be effective against tumor progression and carcinogen induced skin papilloma formation in mice. The extract was found to be cytotoxic towards lung fibroblast (L-929) cells in 72 h MTT assay and the concentration required for 50% cell death was 18 µg/ml. Oral administration of the extract (500 mg/kg b wt) reduced the tumor volume and administration of the same concentration increased the life span by 75% in ascites tumor harboring animals. The extract also significantly delayed the onset of dimethylbenzanthrazene/Croton oil induced skin papilloma in mice in a dose dependent manner.

**References and further reading**


Chapter 17

Ethnopharmacology of *Alstonia macrophylla* ex A. DC

Introduction

*Alstonia* is a widespread genus of evergreen trees and shrubs from Apocynaceae (dogbane family). *Alstonia* (devil tree) consisting of about 40–60 species, native to tropical and subtropical Africa, Central America, Southeast Asia and Australia (Sidiyasa, 1998). About 200 alkaloids have been reported from the genus, many of which are pharmacologically active.

*Alstonia macrophylla* Wall. ex A. DC. is native of Malaysia and frequently planted as an ornamental. The decoctions of *A. macrophylla* leaves and stem bark are widely used by the Onge and Nicobarese of Little Andaman Islands, India, to treat stomachache, skin diseases and urinary infections. Leaves are reported to have anticholeretic and vulnerary effect, and are greased with hot coconut oil for sprains, bruises and dislocated joints as poultice and used as a febrifuge.

**Phytochemistry:** *A. macrophylla* is a rich source of monomeric and dimeric indole alkaloids. The total alkaloid content is the highest in the stem bark and lowest in leaves. Alstophylline, macralstonine, macralstonidine, macrocasalhine, macrosalhine, macrocapamine (Fig. 17.1) and villalstonine (Fig. 17.2) have been reported from the stem bark.

Stem bark of the Indian plant yields villalstonine (0.8–1.0%) and macralstonine(0.06%). 11-methoxy-geissaschizine (Fig. 17.3), 10-11-dimethoxy-geissaschizine (Fig. 17.4) and 16-hydroxy-Nb—demethylalstophylline (Fig. 17.5) have been reported from plants growing in Sri Lanka.
Fig. 17.1 Structure of macrocapamine.

Fig. 17.2 Structure of villalstonine.

Fig. 17.3 Structure of 11-methoxy-geissaschizine.

Fig. 17.4 Structure of 10, 11-dimethoxy-geissaschizine.
Alstozine N-oxide (Fig. 17.6) has been isolated from the leaves of *A. macrophylla*.

Oxindole alkaloids, Nb-demethylalstophyllal oxindole and alstonal have been isolated. Activity-directed fractionation led to the isolation of a novel indole alkaloid, O-methylmacralstonine, from the most active fraction of *A. macrophylla* along with four known alkaloids, talcarpine, villalstonine, pleiocarpamine (Fig. 17.7), and macralstonine.

Three new indole alkaloids, viz. 10-methoxyaffinisine, 10-methoxycathafoline and alstonerinal, in addition to alstonerine, alstonisine (Fig. 17.8), alstonal, alstophylline, vincamajine (Fig. 17.9), lochnerine and cathafoline have been isolated from the stem-bark extract.
Alstoctazine (Fig. 17.10), a novel bisindole alkaloid has been isolated from plants growing in Malaysia.

Ten new indole alkaloids, alstomaline, 10,11-dimethoxynareline, alstohentine, alstomicine, 16-hydroxyalstonisine, 16-hydroxyalstona, 16-hydroxy-N(4)-demethylalstophyllal oxindole, alstophyllal, 6-oxoalstophylline, and 6-oxoalstophyllal, in addition 21 other known ones, were obtained from the leaf extract of the Malayan A. macrophylla. Recently alstiphyllanines A–D (Fig. 17.11–17.14) have been reported.
Other alkaloids reported in literature include alstonidine (Fig. 17.15), alstomacrocine (Fig. 17.16), alstomacroline (Fig. 17.17), alstopicralamine (Fig. 17.18), alstoumerine (Fig. 17.19), macroxine (Fig. 17.20), quebrachidine (Fig. 17.21), 10-Hydroxystrictamine (Fig. 17.22), and Nb-demethylalstophyllinoxindole (Fig. 17.23).
Fig. 17.17 Structure of Alstomacrine.

Fig. 17.18 Structure of Alstopicalamine.

Fig. 17.19 Structure of Alstoumerine.

Fig. 17.20 Structure of Macroline.

Fig. 17.21 Structure of quebrachidine.

Fig. 17.22 Structure of 10-Hydroxystrictamine.
**Ethnopharmacology of Alstonia macrophylla ex A. DC**

**Pharmacology**

*A. macrophylla extracts*

**Antimicrobial activity:** The methanolic crude and methanol-aqueous extract of *A. macrophylla* leaves and n-butanol part of the crude extract showed antimicrobial activity against various strains of *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*, *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Escherichia coli*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *Trichophyton rubrum*, *Trichophyton mentagrophytes var. mentagrophytes* and *Microsporum gypseum*. The minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) values ranges from 64 to 1000 microg/ml for bacteria and 32–128 mg/ml for dermatophytes. The stem-bark extract prepared similarly was found to be less active when compared to the leaves.

**Anti-inflammatory activity:** Methanolic extract of dried leaves of *A. macrophylla* and its fractions were investigated for its anti-inflammatory activity. The extract at a concentration of 200 mg [kg.sup.-1] and 400 mg [kg.sup.-1], p.o. and its fractions at 25 mg [kg.sup.-1] and 50 mg [kg.sup.-1], p.o. showed the significant dose dependent anti-inflammatory activity in carrageenan and dextran-induced rats hind paw edema (acute models) as well as in cotton pellet-induced granuloma (chronic model) in rats.

**Antipyretic activity:** The methanol extract of *A. macrophylla* and its fractions were tested on normal body temperature and yeast-induced pyrexia in Wistar Albino rats. The leaf extract at oral doses of 200 and 300 mg/kg, and the n-butanol fractions of the extract at 50 mg/kg showed significant reduction in normal body temperature and yeast-provoked elevated temperature in a dose-dependent manner comparable to that of standard antipyretic drug paracetamol. The antipyretic effect was started at 1h and extended for at least 5h after the drug administration.

**CNS activity:** Methanol extract at 100–200 mg/kg p.o. and major non-polar fraction B at 50 mg/kg of *A. macrophylla* leaves caused a significant reduction in spontaneous activity, remarkable decrease in exploratory behavioral pattern, a reduction in muscle relaxant activity and also significantly potentiated phenobarbitone sodium-induced sleeping time.
Alkaloids of A. macrophylla

**Antihypertensive effect:** Root alkaloidal mixture is reported to be antihypertensive in animals and humans with no side-effects. Total alkaloid mixture is reported to decrease 10–60% blood pressure in dogs.

Intravenous administration of macroxine is reported to decrease in arterial blood pressure and slight bradycardia in pentothal sodium anaesthetized rats. Four doses viz. 50µg/kg, 100µg/kg, 250µg/kg and 1000µg/kg of macroxine were injected. The effects of macroxine on % fall on mean arterial blood pressure were studied. The dose of 100 µg/kg showed 24.03% fall in the mean arterial blood pressure and resulted in 6.6% bradycardia (Table 1.1).

**Table 17.1 Effect of macroxine on mean arterial blood pressure.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose (µg/kg i.v.)</th>
<th>Mean arterial blood pressure (% fall)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>17.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>24.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>16.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>10.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alstopicralamine demonstrated 55.36% fall in blood pressure with a dose of 30µg/kg given intravenous in an anaesthetized rat (Table 1.2).

**Table 17.2 Effect of alstopicralamine on mean arterial blood pressure.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dose (µg/kg i.v.)</th>
<th>Mean arterial blood pressure (% fall)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>42.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>55.36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Macralstonine has marked antihypertensive effect. Villastonine, in a dose of 2mg/kg body wt of an anaesthetized cat caused fall in blood pressure which was unaffected by atropine. Villastonine is reported to be neuroleptic; 20 mg/kg i.p. dose caused depletion of 5-OH-tryptamine on rat brain after 15 min.

**Cytotoxic activity:** Significant cytotoxic activity was exhibited by the extract of A. macrophylla on two human lung cancer cell lines, MOR-P (adenocarcinoma) and COR-L23 (large cell carcinoma). Activity-directed fractionation led to the isolation of O-methylmacralstonine, talcarpine, villalstonine, pleiocarpamine, and macraistonine. Villalstonine was found to possess pronounced activity on both cell lines with an IC₅₀ value less than 5 µM.

Thirteen indole alkaloids isolated from the root bark of A. macrophylla and a semisynthetic bisindole O-acetylmacralstonine were assessed for cytotoxic activity against two human lung cancer cell lines, MOR-P (adenocarcinoma) and COR-L23 (large cell carcinoma), using the SRB assay. Pronounced cytotoxic activity was exhibited by the bisindoles on both cell lines.
The potent alkaloids were further tested against a human normal cell line (breast fibroblasts) and other human cancer cell lines including STML1 la (melanoma), Caki-2 (renal cell carcinoma), MCF7 (breast adenocarcinoma), and LS174T (colon adenocarcinoma). O-acetylmacralstonine, villalstonine and macrocarpamine were found to possess pronounced activity against cancer cell lines with IC₅₀ values in the range of 2–10 µM, with no discernible cell-type selectivity. However, O-acetylmacralstonine displayed discernibly less toxicity against the normal breast fibroblasts.

**Mutagenic activity:** The Ames Salmonella typhimurium microsomal screening system was standardized and pleiocarpamine was screened for mutagenic potential. The results indicated that pleiocarpamine exhibited mutagenic activity in TA98 tester strain.

**References and further reading**


Chapter 18

Ethnopharmacology of *Alstonia venenata* R. Br

**Introduction**

*Alstonia venenata* R. Br, a member of the family Apocynaceae is known for its medicinal value and considered as a powerful antidote for poisonous snake bites.

**Phytochemistry**

*Alstonia venenata* is rich source of indole alkaloids including venoxidine, venoterpine, venserpine, echitoserpidine, 16-epivenenatine and 16-epialstovenine.

**Ethnopharmacology**

Psychopharmacological investigations of the 4-methoxyindole alkaloids have been reported however detailed studies are missing.  

**Antibacterial activity:** The antibacterial effect of the crude leaf and stem bark extracts in solvent systems like hexane, benzene, isopropanol, ethyl acetate, methanol, and water were investigated. The isopropanol and methanol crude leaf extracts and benzene stem bark extract showed significant antibacterial activity against pathogens and Bacillus sps.

**Antifungal activity:** A plant quaternary alkaloid $\Delta^3$-alstovenine inhibited the spore germination of most of the 17 fungi tested at a concentration of 250–1000 mg/liter. Saprophytic and biotrophic fungi were equally sensitive to the alkaloid. Cercospora sp. was the most sensitive as 100% inhibition of spore germination was observed at 250 mg/liter. Alternaria species, Curvularia species and Fusarium udum were not affected even at 1000 mg/liters.
The indole alkaloid venenatine exhibited antifungal activity against some plant pathogenics and saprophytic fungi. Venenatine in an aqueous acetic acid solution inhibited spore germination of all the 10 tested fungi, Fusarium udum, Alternaria brassicicola, Ustilago cynodontis and Aspergillus flavus showed an especially high sensitivity towards this compound, exhibiting germination levels below 10%. The spore germination and colony development of the parasitic fungus Erysiphe pisi, which causes powdery mildew in pea (*Pisum sativum*), on excised leaves of pea was also significantly affected.

Further reading

Chapter 19

Ethnopharmacology of *Holoptelea integrifolia* Planch.

19.1 Introduction

The plant is found throughout India at the height of 2000 feet. In the Ayurvedic system of medicine, the plant is reputed as an anti-obesity agent. In addition, it is considered to be carminative, cholagogue, alterative and anti-diuretic. The leaves and stem bark of *H. integrifolia* are used for skin diseases, obesity, and cancer. The leaves decoction is used in the management of diarrhea.

19.2 Phytochemistry

2α,3α-dihydroxyolean-12-en-28-oic acid has been reported from heartwood of *H. integrifolia*. The seeds yield 37.4% yellow colored oil. The oil from the seeds of *H. integrifolia* is reported to contain the following acids: lauric 0.2%, myristic 3.5%, palmitic 35.1%, stearic 4.5%, arachidic 1.1%, behenic 0.4%, hexadecenoic 1.9% and oleic 53.3%. Recently, 1, 4-Naphthalenedione has been isolated from the plant.

19.3 Pharmacological investigations

1. Anti-inflammatory activity: The objective of the present study was to investigate the anti-inflammatory property of the aqueous extract of the leaves of *H. integrifolia*. The hind-paw edema was produced in rats by the sub-planter injection of carageenan. The aqueous extract of *H. integrifolia* at dose (250 and 500 mg/kg p+.o) was given to observe % inhibition of paw edema which were comparable with indomethacin
(10 mg/kg p.o) used as a reference drug. The extract administered orally at doses of 250 and 500 mg/kg p.o produced a significant (P < 0.05) dose dependent inhibition of edema formation.

2. Anti-nausea activity: In a rat model, anti-emetic activity of ethanolic extract of leaves of *H. integrifolia* on cisplatin-induced nausea was investigated. Rats react to emetic/nausea-producing stimuli, such as cisplatin, with altered feeding habits, manifested by pica or increased consumption of kaolin. The authors measured pica in rats to quantify cisplatin-induced nausea, and to evaluate the anti-nausea effect of pretreatment with ethanolic extract of *H. integrifolia*, which was given orally. Cisplatin at 3 mg/kg (i.p) induced significant pica accompanied by reduced food intake, suggesting the presence of nausea. Hence, this cisplatin dose was selected for testing the anti-nausea activity of *H. integrifolia*. Cisplatin-induced pica decreased significantly when animals were pretreated with *H. integrifolia* at doses of 250 mg/kg p.o and 500 mg/kg p.o (P<0.01). *H. integrifolia* pretreatment decreased cisplatin induced kaolin intake in the rat model of simulated nausea. The findings suggest that *H. integrifolia* and its active constituent(s) may offer a therapeutic role in chemotherapy-induced emesis.

3. Antimicrobial, antioxidant and wound-healing activity: A. The methanolic extracts of *H. integrifolia* leaves and stem bark were studied for its wound-healing potential. Since wound healing is severely hampered by microbial infection and reactive oxygen species (ROS), this study was undertaken to evaluate antimicrobial and antioxidant activity apart from wound-healing activity. The antimicrobial property of the *H. integrifolia* was studied against six bacterial and five fungal strains using the agar well diffusion method and minimum microbicidal concentration and minimum inhibitory concentration were determined for each strain. Methanolic extract of stem bark showed a larger zone of inhibition (11.3–20.4 mm) than methanolic extract of leaves (9.6–14.9 mm).

The anti-oxidant activity was evaluated by DPPH free radical scavenging activity using HPLC method. The IC_{50} values obtained for methanolic extract of stem bark (TPC: 78.53 ± 1.26 mg/g) and methanolic extract of leaves (TPC: 57.71 ± 1.45 mg/g) were 37.66 ± 0.48 and 50.36 ± 0.59 µg/well, respectively. In excision wound model, more than 90% wound healing was recorded in treated groups by 14 d of post surgery, whereas only 62.99% was observed in the control group. In incision model, higher breaking strengths and higher hydroxyproline content in
treated groups suggested higher collagen re-deposition than the control group. Further, histopathology studies conformed wound-healing activity of *H. integrifolia*.

B. In another study, the ethanolic crude extract of stem bark of *H. integrifolia* was screened for its antioxidant activity using α-tocopherol as standard antioxidant. The free radical scavenging potential of the extract was evaluated by two different antioxidant methods; ferric thiocyanate and thiobarbituric acid method. The ethanol extract was found to exhibit good antioxidant property.

C. The inhibitory effect of a phytochemical, 1, 4-naphthalenedione, isolated from *H. integrifolia* on β-lactamase is reported here. This compound was found to have a synergistic effect with the antibiotic amoxicillin against a resistant strain of *Staphylococcus aureus*. The enzyme was purified from the organism and incubated with the compound. An assay showed that the compound can inhibit the enzymatic activity of β-lactamase. Modeling and molecular docking studies indicated that the compound can fit into the active site of α-lactamase. Hence, the compound can serve as a potential lead compound for the development of effective β-lactamase inhibitor that can be used against β-lactam-resistant microbial strains.

4. **Antidiarrheal activity:** The ethanolic extract of leaves of *H. integrifolia* was studied for its antidiarrheal properties in experimental diarrhea, induced by castor oil and magnesium sulfate in mice. At the doses of 250 and 500 mg/kg per oral, the ethanolic extract showed significant and dose-dependent antidiarrheal activity in both models. The extracts also significantly reduced the intestinal transit in charcoal meal test when compared to atropine sulfate (5 mg/kg; i.m.). The results showed that the ethanolic extract of leaves of *H. integrifolia* have a significant antidiarrheal activity and supports its traditional uses in herbal medicine.

**Further reading**


Chapter 20

Ethnopharmacology of *Terminalia belerica* (Gaertn.) Roxb

20.1 Distribution and botany

*Terminalia belerica* (Gaertn.) Roxb. (Family Combataceae), is popularly known as Belleric myrobalan. It is found growing wild throughout the Indian subcontinent, Sri Lanka and SE Asia, up to 1200 meters in elevation, in a wide variety of ecologies.

It is a large deciduous tree with a buttressed trunk, a thick brownish-gray bark with shallow longitudinal fissures, attaining a height of between 20 and 30 meters. The leaves are crowded around the ends of the branches, alternately arranged, margins entire, elliptic to elliptic-ovate, rounded tip or subacute, midrib prominent, pubescent when young and becoming glabrous with maturity. The flowers are pale greenish yellow with an offensive odor, borne in axillary spikes longer than the petioles but shorter than the leaves. The fruits are ovoid drupes, gray in color, containing a kernel within.

20.2 Traditional medicinal use

In Ayurveda, the drug is classified as an expectorant. It is an integral part of Ayurvedic laxative formulation, Triphala. *T. belerica* is used in the treatment of the common cold, pharyngitis and constipation. Unripe fruit is a mild laxative and ripe fruit is an astringent. *T. belerica* seeds are used as an aphrodisiac. Oil expressed from the seed pulp is used in leucoderma and alopecia. Modern investigations have proved the laxative activity of the oil.

20.3 Phytochemistry: The fruit contains 21.4% tannin, β-sitosterol, belleric acid, gallic acid ellagic acid, methyl gallate, chebulagic acid and carbohydrates. Fruit-pulp yields 37.7%, dark-yellow colored, fixed oil. Chief constituents of the oil are oleic, palmitic, stearic and linoleic acid. The bark contains 1.4–7% tannins.
Saponin glycosides bellericoside and bellericanin have been reported. Recently lignans, including termilignan (Fig. 20.1), thannilignan (Fig. 20.2), 7-hydroxy-3',4'-(methylenedioxy) flavone and anolignan B (Fig. 20.3), have been isolated from the fruit. Olean-3β,22β-diol-12-en-28β-D-glucopyranoside-oic acid, a new triterpenoid glycoside, has been isolated and characterized from the bark.

**20.4 Physicochemical and nutritional profile:** Saran and Singh examined the competent glycerides of the seed oil. The oil was reported to contain oleic (43.21%), linoleic (28.99%), palmitic (11.80%) and stearic acid (16.00%). Singh and Kumar re-examined the seeds in 1946 and reported palmitooelinoelin (35.24%), stearooelinoelin (43.51%), palmitodiolein (1.07%) stearodiolein (1.95%) and dioleolinoelin (9.54%) and triolein (8.69%) as competent glycerides.

Seed kernel oil of *T. belerica* has been reported to yield 12.28% oil on dry basis. Moisture, ash and crude fiber contents of the seed kernel have been found to be 8.43, 2.54, and 8.78%, respectively. The refractive index, co-efficient of viscosity, specific gravity, and energy of activation of the oil were found to be 1.28, 403.6 millipoise at 30°C, 0.93 and 6.97 k.cal/mole respectively.

Iodine value, acid value, peroxide value, saponification value, saponification equivalent, ester value, unsaponifiable matter, acetyl value, Reichert-Meissel value, Polenske value, free fatty acids as oleic acid and cholesterol content of the oil are 107, 3.69, 3.14, 189.24, 296.44, 185.55, 1.24%, 3.78, 0.719, 0.945, 0.87% and 26.59 mg per 100 g oil, respectively.

The oil contains 17.70% myristic acid, 21.6% palmitic acid, 45.67% oleic acid and 14.93% stearic acid. The kernel contains 22.57 and 8.38% total lipid and protein respectively. It also contained 0.19mg, 0.45mg, 0.79g and 1.1mg of vitamin B1, B2, C and A respectively per 100g of kernel. Ca, Mg, K, Na, P, Fe, Mn, Zn and Cu were found to be 0.3, 0.02, 0.2, 0.2, 0.01%;
Ethnopharmacology of Terminalia belerica (Gaertn.) Roxb

23, 1, 12 and 12 ppm respectively in kernel and 0.12, 0.05, 1.15, 0.18, 0.45%; 204, 4, 54 and 50 ppm respectively in oil.

20.5 Ethnopharmacology

Antimalarial and antifungal: An animal study reported antimalarial and antifungal activities of lignans, isolated from *T. belerica*.

Antibacterial: Fruits of *T. belerica* were extracted with petroleum ether, chloroform, acetone, alcohol and water and efficacy of extracts against *Salmonella typhi* and *Salmonella typhimurium* was evaluated. Alcoholic and water extracts of *T. belerica* showed significant anti-salmonella activity and MIC was 12.5 mg/ml against *S. typhimurium*. Results showed that aqueous extract of *T. belerica* was bactericidal at high concentrations whereas low concentrations showed bacteriostatic property. *In vitro* cellular toxicity studies showed no cytotoxicity associated with *T. belerica* extracts.

Anti-diabetic and anti-oxidant activity: Effect of continuous administration of dried 75% methanolic extract of fruits of *T. belerica* suspended in water, was studied in alloxan induced hyperglycemia and antioxidant defense mechanism in rats. *T. belerica* prevented alloxan-induced hyperglycemia significantly from the 6th day of administration and there was 54% reduction on 12th day. Oxidative stress produced by alloxan was found to be significantly lowered by the administration of *T. belerica* extract. Decreased glutathione level produced by alloxan was increased by the administration of the extract in blood and liver.

Antimutagenic: Two polyphenolic fractions, isolated from *T. belerica* were significantly effective against mutagenic effects in *Salmonella typhimurium*. Interaction of the polyphenols with S9 proteins may be the probable cause of the inhibitory effect.

Cholagouge: A study reported bile stimulating activity of *T. belerica* extract.

Hepatoprotective: 1. The effects of an orally administered fraction from the fruits of *T. belerica* in experimental liver injury induced by carbon tetrachloride were studied. Hexobarbitone-induced sleep, zoxazolamine-induced paralysis, transaminases, bilirubin, total protein in serum and microsomal lipid peroxidation and triglycerides in liver were used as indices of liver injury. Pre- and post-treatment with fraction from the fruits of *T. belerica* reduced, in a dose-dependent manner, the elevated levels of serum transaminases and bilirubin in rats.

2. Another study investigated the protective effect of *T. belerica* fruit extract and gallic acid, at different doses against carbon tetrachloride intoxication. Toxicant caused significant increase in the activities
of serum transaminases and serum alkaline phosphatase. Hepatic lipid peroxidation level increased significantly whereas significant depletion was observed in reduced glutathione level after carbon tetrachloride administration. Treatment with *T. belerica* extract (200, 400 and 800mg/kg, p.o.) and gallic acid (50, 100 and 200mg/kg, p.o.) showed dose-dependent, recovery in all biochemical parameters. Gallic acid was found to be most effective against carbon tetrachloride induced liver and kidney damage.

3. Gallic acid isolated from fraction of the fruits of *T. belerica* was evaluated for its hepatoprotective activity against carbon tetrachloride-induced physiological and biochemical alterations in the liver. The main parameters studied were hexobarbitone-induced sleep, zoxazolamine induced paralysis, serum levels of transaminases and bilirubin. The hepatic markers assessed were lipid peroxidation, drug metabolizing enzymes, glucose-6-phosphatase and triglycerides. Administration of gallic acid led to significant reversal of majority of the altered parameters.

**Hypolipidemic activity:** A study reported hypolipidemic action of *T. belerica* in animal experiments. The plant also decreased the liver lipids and heart lipids in the drug-treated animals.

**Clinical studies:** In an open clinical trial of 93 patients suffering from various respiratory conditions *Bibhitaki* was found to have anti-asthmatic, anti-spasmodic, expectorant and anti-tussive activities. However, the design of the study seems to be convoluted.

A study was carried out to evaluate the efficacy of *T. belerica* in 25 patients with a history of diarrhea. The patients received tablets with 150 mgs of the bioactive fraction three times a day. Eleven patients responded to the treatment and required around twelve tablets for recovery; seven patients with *Entamoeba histolytica* cysts, and *Escherichia coli* became negative at the end of the treatment. No side effects were observed during the study.

**Toxicity:** The seed kernels are reported to be narcotic. Long-term studies have indicated non-toxicity of the *T. belerica* extracts.

**References and further reading**


Chahal, HS, and SS, Agrawal. 2007. Safety evaluation of *Gymnema sylvestre* and *Terminalia belerica*. Int. J. Green. Pharm. 1, 30–32.


Chapter 21

Ethnopharmacology of
Nardostachys jatamansi DC.

21.1 Introduction

Nardostachys jatamansi DC., is an important plant of the family Valerianaceae. It is commonly known as Indian spikenard and is found in the Himalayas. N. jatamansi is a perennial herb. Rhizomes occur in short pieces, have a dark gray color and a typical smell. Leaves are sessile and ovate. Flowers are dark–pink in color.

In Ayurveda, N. jatamansi is used for nervous headache, excitement, menopausal symptoms, flatulence, epilepsy and intestinal colic. In combination with cold water, the oil is considered to be effective against nausea, stomachache, flatulence, liver problems, jaundice and kidney complaints, insomnia and headache. Externally, the oil is added to a steaming bath to treat inflammation of the uterus. The oils are also used in eye compounds and as poison antidotes. Oil is reported to be useful in the treatment of an atrial flutter.

21.2 Phytochemistry

The roots of the plant contain essential oil, rich in sesquiterpenes and coumarins. Jatamansone or valeranone (Fig. 5.240) is the principal sesquiterpene. Other sesquiterpenes include nardostachone (Fig. 5.241), dihydrojatamansin, jatamansinol, jatamansic acid, jatamansinone, jatamansinol, oroseolol, oroselone, seselin, valeranal, nardostachyin, nardosinone, spirojatamol, jatamol A and B, calarenol, seychellene, seychelane, coumarin: jatamansin or xanthogalin. A new sesquiterpene acid, nardin and new pyranocoumarin: 2’, 2’-dimethyl-3’-methoxy-3’, 4’-dihydropyranoocoumarin have been reported. An alkaloid, actinidine has been reported (Fig. 21.1).
21.3 Ethnopharmacology

**Hepatoprotective activity:** Pretreatment of rats with 800 mg/kg body wt of the 50% ethanolic extract of *N. jatamansi* demonstrated significant hepatoprotective activity against thioacetamide induced hepatotoxicity. Marked reduction in raised levels of serum transaminase and alkaline phosphatase was observed. Pretreatment of the animals with the extract further resulted in an increase in survival of rats intoxicated with LD90 dose of the hepatotoxic drug.

[Fig. 21.1 Structure of Actinidine.]

**Cardio protective and hypolipidemic activity:** Rats administered doxorubicin (15 mg/kg, i.p.) showed myocardial damage that was manifested by the elevation of serum marker enzymes (lactate dehydrogenase, creatine phosphokinase, aspartate aminotransaminase and alanine aminotransaminase). The animals showed significant changes in the antioxidant enzymes (superoxide dismutase, catalase, glutathione peroxidase and glutathione-S-transferase) and lipid peroxidation levels. Pretreatment with *N. jatamansi* extract significantly prevented these alterations and restored the enzyme activity and lipid peroxides to near normal levels. Restoration of cellular normality accredits the *N. jatamansi* with a cytoprotective role in doxorubicin-induced cardiac damage.

In a study, ethanolic extract of *N. jatamansi* was studied in Wistar albino rats for cardio protective activity against doxorubicin induced myocardial injury. Doxorubicin is inhibitor of fatty oxidation in the heart and results in cardio toxicity. The rats treated with a single dose of doxorubicin (15 mg/kg) intraperitoneally showed an increase in serum and cardiac lipids (cholesterol, triglycerides, free fatty acids and phospholipids), along with a significant rise in serum low density lipoproteins, very low density lipoproteins and a drop in high density lipoproteins levels, resulting in alteration of serum and cardiac lipid metabolizing enzymes. Pretreatment with an extract of *N. jatamansi* (500 mg/kg) orally for 7 d to doxorubicin induced rats showed a significant prevention in the lipid status with the activities of the lipid metabolizing enzymes. Histopathological
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

observations were also in correlation with the biochemical parameters. These findings suggest that the protective and hypolipidemic effect of N. jatamansi against doxorubicin induced myocardial injury in rats could possibly be mediated through its anti lipid peroxidative properties.

A 50% ethanolic extract of Curcuma longa (tuber) and N. jatamansi (whole plant) elevated the HDL-cholesterol/total cholesterol ratio in triton-induced hyperlipidemic rats. There also was a reduction in the ratio of total cholesterol/phospholipids.

Nootropic activity: Acetyl cholinesterase inhibitory activity of methanolic and successive water extracts of N. jatamansi (rhizome), were investigated for acetyl cholinesterase inhibitory activity in vitro. Results indicated that methanolic extracts to be more active than water extracts. The IC (50) values obtained for methanolic and successive water extracts of N. jatamansi was 47.21μg/ml. These results partly substantiate the traditional use of N. jatamansi for improvement of cognition.

Anticonvulsant activity: Ethanol extract of the roots of N. jatamansi was studied for its anticonvulsant activity and neurotoxicity, alone and in combination with phenytoin in rats. The results demonstrated a significant increase in the seizure threshold by N. jatamansi root extract against maximal electroshock seizure model as indicated by a decrease in the extension/flexion ratio. However, the extract was ineffective against pentylenetetrazole-induced seizures. N. jatamansi root extract also showed minimal neurotoxicity against rotarod test at doses that increased the seizure threshold. Further, pretreatment of rats with phenytoin at a dose of 12.5, 25, 50 and 75 mg/kg in combination with 50mg/kg of N. jatamansi root extract resulted in a significant increase in the protective index of phenytoin from 3.63 to 13.18. The dose response studies of phenytoin alone and in combination with N. jatamansi extract on the serum levels of phenytoin clearly demonstrated the synergistic action of both the drugs.

Antidepressant activity: A 15-d treatment with an alcoholic root extract of N. jatamansi caused an overall increase in the levels of central monoamines and inhibitory amino acids, including a change in the levels of serotonin, 5-hydroxyindole acetic acid, gamma-aminobutyric acid, and taurine in rat brain.

Antiparkinson’s activity: Rats were treated with 200, 400, and 600 mg/kg body weight of N. jatamansi for 3 wk. On day 21, 2 microl of 6-OHDA (12 microg in 0.01% in ascorbic acid-saline) was infused into the right striatum, while the sham-operated group received 2 microl of vehicle. Three weeks after the 6-OHDA injection, the rats were tested for neurobehavioral activity and were scarified after 6 wk for the estimation of lipid peroxidation. The increase in drug-induced rotations and deficits in locomotor activity and muscular coordination due to 6-OHDA injections were significantly and
Ethnopharmacology of Nardostachys jatamansi DC.

365

dose-dependently restored by *N. jatamansi*. A significant decrease in the level of dopamine and its metabolites and an increase in the number of dopaminergic D2 receptors in striatum were observed after 6-OHDA injection, and both were significantly recovered following *N. jatamansi* treatment.

**Neuroprotective activity:** Pretreatment with an alcoholic extract of *N. jatamansi* dosed at 250 mg/kg of for 15 d protected rats against focal ischemia caused by middle cerebral artery occlusion. The protective effect may be associated with improving glutathione content, inhibiting lipid peroxidation, and activity on the Na+/K+ ATPase and catalase enzyme systems.

**Nootropic activity:** 1. Acetyl cholinesterase inhibitory activity of methanolic and successive water extracts of *N. jatamansi* (rhizome), were investigated for acetyl cholinesterase inhibitory activity *in vitro*. Results indicated that methanolic extracts to be more active than water extracts. The IC (50) values obtained for methanolic and successive water extracts of *N. jatamansi* was 47.21µg/ml. These results partly substantiate the traditional use of *N. jatamansi* for improvement of cognition.

2. The elevated plus maze and the passive avoidance paradigm were employed to evaluate learning and memory parameters. Three doses (50, 100, and 200 mg/kg, p.o.) of an ethanolic extract of *N. jatamansi* were administered for 8 successive days to both young and aged mice. The 200 mg/kg dose of *N. jatamansi* ethanolic extract significantly improved learning and memory in young mice and also reversed the amnesia induced by diazepam (1 mg/kg, i.p.) and scopolamine (0.4 mg/kg, i.p.).

Furthermore, it also reversed aging-induced amnesia due to natural aging of mice. As scopolamine-induced amnesia was reversed, it is possible that the memory improvement may be because of facilitation of cholinergic transmission in the brain. Hence, *N. jatamansi* might prove to be a useful memory restorative agent in the treatment of dementia seen in elderly persons. The underlying mechanism of action can be attributed to its antioxidant property.

**Antifungal activity:** *N. jatamansi* essential oil demonstrated fungistatic activity against *Aspergillus flavus*, *Aspergillus niger* and *Fusarium oxysporum*.

21.4 Jatamansone (valeranone): Animal studies done on jatamansone have reported antioestrogenic, antiarrhythmic, antihypertensive, anticonvulsant, sedative and tranquilizing activities. In animal experiments, a limiting effect upon convulsant thresholds and a reduction of motor coordination
ability traceable to the sequiterpene ketone, valeranone contained in the
drug have been demonstrated. Jatamansone is anticonvulsivse in effect
without exhibiting neuroleptic characteristics.

Some experiments, typical for tranquillizers jatamansone prolonged
barbiturate hypnosis, impaired rotarod performance, potentiate the
body-temperature lowering activity of reserpine. Jatamansone exhibited
anticonvulsant activity against electric shock and gastro protective actions.
In toxicological studies on rats and mice an oral LD50 of greater than
3160 mg/kg was found, which suggests the possibility of a therapeutically
useful dose ratio.

Preliminary clinical studies with jatamansone reported reduced
incidence of aggressiveness, restlessness, stubbornness and insomnia. In a
study conducted on hyperkinetic children, jatamansone, D-amphetamine
and chlorpromazine were compared for efficacy. Jatamansone and
amphetamine significantly improved behavior but amphetamine was
better in reducing aggressiveness and restlessness. Children with mental
retardation showed little response to any of the drugs. Jatamansone has
fewer side effects than D-amphetamine and chlorpromazine.

21.5 Jatamansin: The coumarin: jatamansin is efficacious in internal
treatment of varicose veins.

Further reading
Ahmad M, Yousuf S, Khan Badruzaman, Hoda Md N. Ahmad MA, Ishrat T, Agarwal
AK, and Islam F. 2006. Attenuation by Nardostachys jatamansi of 6-hydroxydopamine-
induced parkinsonism in rats: behavioral, neurochemical, and immunohistochemical
protects against liver
damage induced by thioacetamide in rats. J. Ethnopharmacol. 71, 359–363.
Arora RB, and Arora CK. 1963. Hypotensive and tranquillizing activity of jatamansone
7, 51–60.
6, 225.
21, 455–460.
Arora RB, Sharma PL, and Kapila K. 1985. Antiarrhythmic and anticonvulsant action of
Bagchi A, Oshima Y, Hikino H. 1990. Spirojatomol, a new skeletal sesquiterpenoid of
Ethnopharmacology of Nardostachys jatamansi DC.


Chapter 22

Ethnopharmacology of
Eclipta alba Linn.

22.1 Introduction

Eclipta alba (L.) Hassk. (Asteraceae) grows commonly in moist areas as a weed all over the world. In many parts of India, it is grown commercially as a medicinal crop. It is an annual, erect or prostate entirely pubescent herb, often rooting at nodes with opposite, sessile, usually oblong, 2.5–7.5 cm long leaves with appressed hairs. Floral heads 6–8 mm in diameter, solitary, white; achene compressed and narrowly winged. The aerial parts of the plant are used in medicine.

22.2 Traditional medicinal uses

India: According to Ayurvedic philosophy E.alba is bitter; alterative and anthelmintic. It is useful in inflammations, hernia, eye diseases, bronchitis, asthma, leucoderma, anemia, heart and skin diseases, night blindness, syphilis etc. It is reported to be beneficial for the complexion, hair, eyes, and teeth. Expressed juice of E. alba mixed with goat’s milk is used in frontal sinusitis and nasal cattarh in children. Bhringraj taila and Bhringrajadi churana are official preparations.

In the Unani system, the juice of E. alba is used in ‘Hab Miskeen Nawaz’ alongwith aconite, Croton tiglium, ‘triphala’, Piper nigrum, Piper longum, Zingiber officinale, and minerals like mercury, sulfur, arsenic, borax etc. for various types of pains in the body. It is also a constituent of ‘Roghan Amla Khas’ for applying on hair, and of Ma’jun Murrawah-ul-arwah.

Korea: The plant is used as an antidote for snake bites.

The Philippines: A decoction of the dried plant is used for heamoptysis and heamtemesis. For dysentery and heamturia urine, a decoction of the dried herb or tincture is used.
Medicated tea or tinctures are used as household remedies for sprains, furuncle and dermatitis; the tea or tincture is excellent.

**Nepal:** The plant juice, mixed with an aromatic (essential oil), is used in the treatment of catarrhal problems and jaundice. The leaves are used in the treatment of scorpion stings.

### 22.3 Phytochemistry

**Alkaloids:** Alkaloids including ecliptine and nicotine have been reported. Bio-active steroidal alkaloids, verazine, 20-epi-3-dehydroxy-3-oxo-5, 6-dihydro-4, 5-dehydroverazine, ecliptalbine, (20R)-4ß-hydroxyverazine, 4ß-hydroxyverazine, (20R)-25ß-hydroxyverazine and 25ß-hydroxyverazine have been identified from the methanolic extract.

**Coumarins:** The dried leaves of *E. alba* have been reported to contain wedelolactone (Fig. 22.1), a complex coumarin and its derivatives dimethylewedelolactone-7-glucoside and nor-wedelolactone. Demethylwedelolactone, isodemethylwedelolactone, and strychnolactone have been reported by percolation and hot extraction of the whole plant of *E. alba*.

![Fig. 22.1 Structure of Wedelolactone.](image)

**Hydrocarbons:** Dithienylacetylene ester, ecliptal or α-terthienyl aldehyde, α-terthienyl-methanol and α-formylterthienyl.

**Triterpenes:** Ecliptasaponin C and D, new triterpenoid glucosides, have been isolated from the whole plant of *E. alba*. A new triterpene saponin, ecalbatin, together with α-amyrin (Fig. 5.245), β-amyrin (Fig. 5.245), ursolic acid (Fig. 5.245), oleanolic acid (Fig. 5.245), and wedelic acid have been isolated. From the whole parts of six new oleanane triterpene glycosides, ecalbasaponins I–VI have been isolated.

**Thiopenes:** Polyacetylenic thiopenes 5′-senecioylloxymethylene-2-(4-isovaleroybut-3-ynyl) dithiophene, 5′-tigloyloxymethylene-2-(4-isovaleroybut-3-ynyl) dithiophene have been reported from the plant. The roots contain polyacetylene substituted thiophenes.

**Sterols:** The aerial parts of the plant have been reported to contain phytosterol; β glucoside of phytosterol, daucosterol and stigmasterol-
3-O-glucoside. The whole plant contains stigmasterol (Fig. 5.247) and β-sitosterol (Fig. 5.247).

**Flavonoids:** Apigenin (Fig. 5.112), luteolin (Fig. 15.12) and luteolin-7-glucoside (Fig. 15.9).

**Miscellaneous:** Nonacosanol, stearic acid, lacceric acid and 3,4-dihydoxy benzoic acid.

### 22.4 Ethnopharmacology

**Anti-aggressive effect:** The present study investigated the ability of 100 and 200mg/kg of aqueous extract of *E. alba* to circumvent aggression. Foot shock induced aggression and the water competition test were utilized as models for screening of anti-aggressive activity. *E. alba* significantly minimized dominance (p<0.05) which is correlated to the level of aggression particularly with 200mg/kg in the water competition test. A tangible behavioral submission was observed with 100 and 200mg/kg and of *E. alba* in the foot shock induced test.

**Analgesic effect:** The present experimental research investigated the analgesic activity of the total ethanol extract of *E. alba*, and isolated alkaloids in albino mice using the tail clip method, the tail flick method and the acetic acid induced writhing response. The ethanol extract and the total alkaloids produce significant analgesic activity in all the different models of analgesia used. However, the total alkaloidal fraction was the most efficacious in all the models tested.

**Anti-inflammatory effect:** The methanolic extract administered by the oral route at a concentration of 100 and 200 mg/kg showed the significant dose dependent anti-inflammatory activity in carrageenin and egg white induced hind paw oedema in rats. Anti-inflammatory activity of the tested extract was comparable with that of the standard drug indomethacin (10 mg/kg) and cyproheptadine (8 mg/kg).

**Antibacterial effect:** The antimicrobial activity of wedelolactone was evaluated using minimum inhibitory concentration and agar well diffusion method. The compound exhibited good activity against *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *Salmonella typhimurium*. The MIC test showed the growth inhibition of *S. epidermidis* at a concentration of 15.0 µg/ml, ZOI 10.24 mm and of *S. typhimurium* at a concentration of 25.0 µg/ml, ZOI 9.16 mm.

**Antifungal effect:** 25beta-hydroxyverazine showed good activity against *Candida albicans* (Abdel Kader et al., 1998). The in vitro antifungal activity of the whole plant of *E. alba* extract was investigated against Candida tropicalis, Rhodotorula glutinis and Candida albicans. The extract showed high degree of activity against all tested fungi. The inhibitory effects of extracts are very similar to those of standard antibiotics used.
**Antimalarial effect:** The anti-malarial activity of *Eclipta alba* leaves extract was evaluated against *Plasmodium berghei* ANKA strain in mice. A standard inoculum of $1 \times 10^6$ infected erythrocytes was used. The methanolic leaf extract (250–750 mg/kg) produced a dose-dependent chemosupression or schizontocidal effect during early and established infection and high mean survival time values particularly in the group administered 750 mg/kg/day of extract.

**Antihyperglycemic effect:** Oral administration of leaf suspension of *E. alba* (2 and 4 g/kg body weight) for 60 d resulted in significant reduction in blood glucose (from 372.0 ± 33.2 to 117.0 ± 22.8), glycosylated hemoglobin HbA1c, a decrease in the activities of glucose-6 phosphatase and fructose-1,6-bisphosphatase, and an increase in the activity of liver hexokinase. *E. alba* at dose of 2 g/kg body weight exhibited better sugar reduction than 4 g/kg body weight.

**Hepatoprotective effect:** 1. Ethanol/water extracts significantly counteracted CCl$_4$-induced inhibition of the hepatic microsomal drug metabolizing enzymes. The loss of hepatic lysosomal acid phosphatase and alkaline phosphatase by CCl$_4$ was significantly restored by ethanol/water extract.

2. In another study, the EtOAc part of alcoholic extraction exhibited significant hepatoprotective activity against CCl$_4$-induced liver injury in rats.

3. In yet another study, treatment with 50% ethanol extract of *E. alba* (100 & 250mg/100g body weight) was found to protect the mice from hepatotoxic action of paracetamol as evidenced by significant reduction in the elevated serum transaminase levels. Histopathological studies showed marked reduction in fatty degeneration and centrilobular necrosis in animals receiving different doses of *E.alba* along with paracetamol as compared to the control group.

**Hypolipidemic effect:** 1. The total alcoholic extract of *E. prostrata* exhibited a dose-dependent activity in albino rats when compared to standard drugs. The activity was assessed by studying the lipid profiles of serum, liver and heart of the control and drug-treated animals.

2. Charles River Sprague-Dawley CD rats were fed experimental diets supplemented with 0 mg (control), 25 mg (E25), 50 mg (E50), or 100 mg (E100) of a freeze-dried butanol fraction of *E. prostrata* per kilogram of diet for 6 wk. Serum triacylglyceride and total cholesterol levels were significantly lower in the E50 and E100 groups by 9.8% to 19.0% and by 10.7% to 13.4%, respectively, and low-density lipoprotein–cholesterol levels were significantly reduced in the same groups by 10.3% to 13.0% compared with the untreated control group.
Neuropharmacological effects: 1. The aqueous, hydroalcoholic extracts and hydrolyzed fraction of the aqueous extract of *E. alba* was subjected to neuropharmacological activities in rats. The findings indicated nootropic activity of the aqueous extract (300 mg/kg, p.o.) and its hydrolyzed fraction (30 mg/kg, p.o.). The aqueous extract and the hydrolyzed fraction exhibited gastro protective effect and normalized the white blood cell count in the milk induced leukocytosis challenge model.

2. The suspension of *E. alba* containing 100 and 200 mg/kg was administered to rats to evaluate Transfer Latency on an elevated plus maze. Mice were placed at the center of open field apparatus to assess spatial habitual learning, observed for 20 min for rearing and time spent during rearing using varied doses for 30 min, 24 h and 96 and 144 h. The results revealed significant improvement of retrieval memory.

Hair growth promoting effects: The study was aimed to investigate the efficacy of methanol extract of *E. alba* as hair growth promoter. Pigmented C57/BL6 mice, preselected for their telogen phase of hair growth were used. The extract was applied topically to assess telogen to anagen transition. The methanol extract of whole plant when tested for hair growth promoting potential, exhibited dose dependent activity in C57BL6 mice.

Effect on proteolytic and hemorrhagic activities: 1. Wedelolactone and demethylwedelolactone, isolated from *E.alba* demonstrated significant trypsin inhibitory effects.

2. The partially purified ethyl acetate extract (PEE) of *E. prostrata* (containing 47% of wedelolactone) and wedelolactone demonstrated strong antiproteolytic and antihemorrhagic activity against Malayan Pit Viper venom in a dose-dependent manner. The extract, at 5 mg/ml, inhibited proteolytic activity of 100 µg of the venom and hemorrhagic activity of 3 minimum hemorrhagic doses to 95% and 65% respectively. At the same concentration, wedelolactone neutralized the proteolytic activity at around 76% and, at doses of 0.25–1.0 mg/ml, offered protection against hemorrhagic activity of the venom in the range 3–3.5%.

Effect on osteoblast differentiation: Flavonoid, diosmetin (Fig. 22.2), and isoflavonoids, 3’hydroxybiochanin A (Fig. 22.3), and 3’O-methylorobol (Fig. 22.4), isolated from the methanol extract of *E. prostrata* significantly increased osteoblast differentiation as assessed by the alkaline phosphatase activity.
22.5 Clinical studies: Two studies reported efficacy of *E. alba* in the treatment of infective hepatitis in adults and jaundice in children, respectively. A clinical study reported diuretic, hypotensive, and hypocholesterolemic properties of *E. alba*, which helps in the alleviating oxidative stress-induced complications in hypertensive patients.

References and further reading


Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology


Ethnopharmacology of Eclipta alba Linn. 375


Chapter 23

Ethnopharmacology of Cassia siamea Lam.

23.1 Introduction

*Cassia siamea* (Lam.) H.S.Irwin & Barneby, Fabaceae is a native of Sri Lanka and is widely cultivated in Southeast Asia. It is traditionally used to treat insomnia, diabetes, fever, hypertension and constipation. *C. siamea* is used in Southwest Nigeria as a remedy for febrile illness.

23.2 Phytochemistry

Barakol (Fig. 23.1), a dioaxaphenalne derivative is a biologically active constituent extracted from the leaves and flowers of *C. siamea*.

![Fig. 23.1 Structure of Barakol.](image)

The trunk and root bark contain alkaloids cassiamine A, B and C. Alkaloids including siaminine A (Fig. 23.2), B and C, have been isolated from the alcoholic extract of the leaves. Two alkaloids, cassiarine A and B have been isolated from the leaves of *C. siamea*.

Three alkaloids, cassiarins C–E (Figs. 23.3 to 23.5), and a new chromone, 10, 11-dihydroanhydrobarakol (Fig. 23.6) having moderate antiplasmodial activity against *Plasmodium falciparum* 3D7, were isolated from the flowers of *C. siamea*. 
Fig. 23.2 Structure of Siaminine A.

Fig. 23.3 Structure of Cassiarine C.

Fig. 23.4 Structure of Cassiarine D.

Fig. 23.5 Structure of Cassiarine E.

Fig. 23.6 Structure of 10,11-dihydroanhydrobarakol.
New bischromone, chrobisiamone A (Fig. 2.1) with an antiplasmodial activity has been isolated from the leaves.

![Fig. 23.7 Structure of Chrobisiamone A.](image)

Siameanin, a bianthraquinone has been reported. Chrysophanol and physcion (Fig. 23.8) have been reported from the trunk bark.

![Fig. 23.8 Structure of Physcion.](image)

From heartwood of *Cassia siamea*, a new bianthraquinone, 4,4′-bis(1,3-dihydroxy-2-methyl-6, 8-dimethoxy anthraquinone), along with 1,1′-bis(4,5-dihydroxy-2-methyl anthraquinone), chrysophanol and emodin (Fig. 2.4) have been isolated. New triterpenoid glycoside, 19α, 24-dihydroxyurs-12-ene-28-oic acid- 3-O-β-D-xylopyranoside and anthraquinones have been reported.

Chrysophanol, chrysophanol-1-O-beta-D-glucopyranoside and 1-[(beta-D-glucopyranosyl-(1→6)-0-beta-D-glucopyranosyl) oxy]-8-hydroxyl-3-methy-9,10-anthraquinone from the stem of *C. siamea* [14]. A new 10-hydroxyl anthrone glycoside, 1, 8, 10-trihydroxyl-1-O-β-D-glucopyranosyl-syl-3-methyl-10-C-(S)-β-D-glucopyranosyl-anthrone-9 (Figure 23.9) has been isolated from the stem of *C. siamea*. 
Triterpenes including lupenone and lupeol have been reported.

Seed oil is reported to be a minor source of vernolic acid and cyclopropenoid fatty acids.

23.3 Ethnopharmacology

Purgative effects: The present study investigated the purgative effects of barakol on the longitudinal smooth muscle contractions of the rat ileum. The extract increased the force of spontaneous muscle contractions in a concentration-dependent manner (EC50 = 0.3 mM). Saxitoxin (0.3 mM) abolished the stimulatory effects of barakol. In addition, atropine (10 mM), partially inhibited barakol-induced smooth muscle contractions suggestive of involvement of cholinergic nerves. The motor effects of barakol were further examined in muscle strips treated with catecholamines to suppress spontaneous contractile activity and decrease muscle tone. Norepinephrine or dopamine (10 mM) decreased the amplitude of spontaneous contractions by 72% and 18%, respectively. The findings suggested the possible role of barakol in gut motility disorders.

Anxiolytic effects: The behavioral effects of an extract of Cassia siamea, and barakol, on an elevated plus-maze compared with diazepam were investigated. An aqueous extract of C. siamea (1, 6, and 12 g/kg body wt., orally)
produced a small increase in the percentage of the open : total number of arm entries and time, time spent on the end of the open arms, total number of arm entries, and number of rears/min. Barakol [10 mg/kg, intraperitoneally] significantly increased all the behavioral parameters in a manner similar to diazepam (1 mg/kg, IP, 30 or 60 min before testing), except that barakol and not diazepam increased both the number of rears and total arm entries. Barakol at 25 and 50 mg/kg increased the percentage of the open: total number of arm entries and time and number of rears. The results are suggestive of anxiolytic properties of barakol similar to diazepam. However barakol differed from diazepam in that it increases exploratory and locomotor behavior.

**CNS inhibitory effects:** Barakol reduced spontaneous locomotor activity, increased the number of sleeping animals and prolonged the thiopental-induced sleeping time, demonstrating a sedative effect. As regards interactions between barakol and standard convulsants, only a high dose (100 mg/kg, i.p.) of barakol slightly prolonged the latency of clonic convulsion induced by picrotoxin. Barakol (25–100 mg/kg, i.p.) suppressed methamphetamine (1 mg/kg, i.p.)-induced hyper-locomotor activity in a dose-dependent manner, indicating an effect on the dopaminergic system. The findings are suggestive of the inhibitory effect of barakol on dopamine release.

**Antioxidant effects:** 1. The antioxidant activity of alcoholic extract of *C. siamea* rich in polyphenols was investigated. At a concentration of 250 µg/ml, 96% of DPPH radicals and at 500 µg/ml, 42.7, 32.7 and 64.5% of O2−, H2O2 and NO respectively could be scavenged by *C. siamea* flower extract. The extract also inhibited OH radical induced oxidation of protein (BSA) and LPO in murine hepatic microsomes. *C. siamea* flower extract also exhibited a significant antioxidant activity in acute oxidative tissue injury animal model constituted by CCl4 induced hepatotoxicity. The extract also protected against histopathological changes produced by CCl4.

2. The antioxidant potential of hexane, chloroform, ethyl acetate, methanol, and water extract of bark and leaves of *C. siamea* was explored by superoxide anion radical scavenging assay. The different extracts showed significant inhibition of superoxide radicals in a dose-dependent manner. Among all the bark extracts of *C. siamea*, the methanol extract showed the maximum inhibition of 60.5% at 800 µg/ml concentration and water extract also showed strong antioxidant potential of 51.3% at 1000 µg/ml concentration. The various leaf extracts of *C. siamea* showed moderate antioxidant potential of 25–50% at 1000 µg/ml. This preliminary study indicates the antioxidant activity of the bark and leaves of *C. siamea*. 
Antiplasmodial effects: The ethnobotanical use of *C. siamea* as a febrifuge led to the bioassay-guided fractionation of stem bark of the plant extract, using the parasite lactate dehydrogenase assay and multi-resistant strain of *Plasmodium falciparum* (K1) for assessing the in vitro antimalarial activity. Emodin and lupeol were isolated from the ethyl acetate fraction. Both compounds were found to be the active principles responsible for the antiplasmodial property with IC₅₀ values of 5 µg/mL, respectively. Three alkaloids, cassiarins C–E, and a new chromone, 10,11-dihydroanhydrobarakol, isolated from flowers of *C. siamea* showed moderate antiplasmodial activity against *Plasmodium falciparum* 3D7.

Analgesic and anti-inflammatory effects
Analgesic, anti-inflammatory and antipyretic activities of the petroleum ether, chloroform, ethanol and water extracts of *C. siamea* stem-bark were assessed in rats with the hot plate test, paw pressure and carrageenan induced paw oedema, respectively. Cytotoxicity was assessed against KB and Vero cells. At the doses used (100, 200, and 400 mg/kg) ethanol and water extracts showed significant and dose-dependent analgesic and anti-inflammatory effects. None of the extracts had cytotoxic activity on KB and Vero cell lines and the most active extracts (ethanol and water extracts) had no acute toxicity.

Cardio protective effects
Barakol, isolated from leaves of *C. siamea*, was investigated on aconitine-induced cardiac arrhythmias in anesthetized rats. The bolus intravenous injection of aconitine induced ventricular fibrillation and ventricular tachycardia. Pretreatment with barakol (10 mg/kg i.v.) reduced the incidence of aconitine-induced ventricular fibrillation and ventricular tachycardia, as well as mortality. The findings suggest that the mechanisms of the protective effects of barakol on aconitine-induced cardiac toxicity were related to the prevention of intracellular Na⁺ accumulation.

Toxicity
**Acute:** Acute toxicity study of the ethanol extract of *C. siamea* in rats was conducted following intraperitoneal administration of graded doses. LD₅₀ of *C. siamea* extract was found to be 9600 mg kg⁻¹ body weight. Mortality occurred in rats treated with high doses of 4000, 5000, 6000, 7000, 8000 and 16000 mg kg⁻¹ and appears to be dose dependent.

**Subacute:** The LD₅₀ of barakol after oral administration was 2.33 g/kg. In an acute hepatotoxicity study, single-oral administration of various doses of barakol (60, 100 and 200 mg/kg) were given to rats and the animals were scarified at 24 h after the administration. Liver biopsy revealed no
sign of liver damage when compared to those from a paracetamol treated positive control group.

In a subacute toxicity test, barakol at doses of 60, 120 and 240 mg/kg were orally administered daily for a period of 4 wk. A half of 240 mg/kg group, called a recovery group, was maintained for a further 2 wk without barakol administration. No mortality was observed in the controlled and barakol-treated animals. From the histological examination, the barakol-treated group showed only fatty changes in the liver. From blood chemistry determination, bilirubin was increased (p<0.05) in a dose-dependent manner and the value returned to normal values within 2 wk. The findings suggested regular monitoring of serum bilirubin with clinical use of barakol.

**Chronic:** A six-month toxicity study of *C. siamea* powdered leaves (containing 0.17% barakol) was performed in five groups of 15 Wistar rats of each sex. The control group received 5 ml of distilled water/kg BW/day orally, while three of the four experimental groups were given *C. siamea* powdered leaves at the doses of 20, 200 and 2,000 mg/kg BW/day. For the recovery study, the fourth treatment group received the powdered leaves at the dose of 2,000 mg/kg BW/day for 6 mon and was later kept without *C. siamea* administration for 14 more days before being scarified. The levels of bilirubin of the animals receiving the powdered leaf at the doses of 200 and 2,000 mg/kg BW/day were significantly higher than those of their controls. The hepatic damage was more pronounced in male rats. The results showed that long-term consumption of the leaf from *C. siamea* is linked to dose-dependent hepatotoxic effect in rats even at the therapeutic dose.

**Further reading**


Chapter 24

Ethnopharmacology of *Tylophora asthmatica* Wight & Arn.

24.1 Introduction

*T. asthmatica* Wight & Arn. syn *Tylophora indica* Merr., is a perennial plant native to the South and East India. It belongs to the family Asclepidaceae and is commonly known as Indian Ipecacuanha. In Ayurveda, *T. asthmatica* is known as *arkaparni* or *antamool* [which is based on morphology of the roots]. The drug is official in Bengal pharmacopoeia.

24.2 Traditional uses

In Traditional Indian Medicine (Ayurveda), *T. asthmatica* is used in treatment of asthma, dermatitis and rheumatism. The plant has been described as bronchodilator, emetic, expectorant and diaphoretic.

24.3 Phytochemistry

*T. asthmatica* contains 0.2–0.3% of alkaloids having phenanthroindalizidine and furoquinoline framework. Tylophorine (Fig. 5.15) and tylophorine are important alkaloids encountered and the percentage is not affected by seasonal variations.

The phenolic alkaloid tylophorinidine (Fig. 24.1) isolated from *T. asthmatica*, along with minor alkaloids, *d*-septicine (Fig. 24.2) and *d*-isotylocrebrine have been isolated from the plant.
Tylophorinidine, a minor alkaloid isolated from the roots of *T. asthmatica* has been characterized as 14-hydroxytylophorine. New alkaloids, desmethyltylophorine, and desmethylytylophorinine have been reported. Other alkaloids including, tyloindane (Fig. 24.3) and tyloindicine A-G (Figs. 24.4 and 24.5) have been characterized from the plant.
Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology

Fig. 24.5 Structure of Tyloindicine G.

The extract of *T. asthmatica*, marketed by pharmaceutical companies is standardized to contain 0.1% of the total alkaloids.

### 24.4 Ethnopharmacology

**Anti asthmatic and anti allergic effects:** The total alkaloids of *T. asthmatica* were tested for mast cell stabilizing effect in comparison with disodium cromoglycate by challenging against three different mast cell degranulators, diazoxide, carbachol and polymixin B, *in vitro*. Both tylophora alkaloids and disodium cromoglycate prevented in similar concentrations, the mast cell degranulation occurring with diazoxide alone. Tylophora alkaloids may have similar mechanism of action as disodium cromoglycate through cyclic AMP.

The effect of the alcoholic extract of *T. asthmatica* on weight of the adrenal glands and its functional activities and pituitary adrenal axis was studied on normal, unilaterally adrenalectomised, dexamethasone treated and hypophysectomised male albino rats. The extracts showed stimulation of adrenals as indicated by increase in weight and decrease in cholesterol and vitamin C. It was concluded that probably, *T. asthmatica* acts by direct stimulation of adrenal cortex.

**Cytotoxic effect:** A study reported cytotoxicity of alkaloids derived from *T. asthmatica* by Ali et al., (2001). Tylophora alkaloids induced apoptosis in K562 cells with characteristic apoptotic features like nuclear condensation, apoptotic body formation, flipping of membrane phosphatidyserine, activation of caspase 3 and release of mitochondrial cytochrome c. These studies suggest that the Tylophora alkaloids, in addition to their antiproliferative effects also induce apoptosis in erythroleukemic cells. These observations imply that Tylophora alkaloids could be useful molecules for their antiproliferative activity and for induction of apoptosis in tumor cells.
Four tylophorine analogs, designated DCB-3500, DCB-3501, DCB-3502, and DCB-3503. All four tylophorine analogs exerted potent growth-inhibitory effects against HepG2, a human hepatocellular carcinoma cell line, and KB, a human nasopharyngeal carcinoma cell line. HepG2 cells. Unlike conventional antitumor drugs, 3 micro M DCB-3503 did not cause DNA breaks or apoptosis in HepG2 cells. Tylophorine analogs had an inhibitory effect on cyclic AMP response elements, activator protein-1 sites, or nuclear factor-kappaB binding site-mediated transcriptions.

**Hepatoprotective effect:** The methanolic extract of *T. asthmatica* leaves was screened for hepatoprotective activity in carbon tetrachloride induced hepatotoxicity in albino rats. Hepatoprotective activity of methanolic extract at a dose of 200 mg/kg and 300 mg/kg body weight, i.p., was compared with Silymarin (25 mg/kg, i.p.) treated animals. *Tylophora indica* leaves (200 and 300 mg/kg) exhibited significant reduction in serum hepatic enzymes when compared to rats treated with carbon tetrachloride alone. Furthermore, histopathological studies were also done to support the study.

**Immunosuppressive effect:** Crude extract of the leaves of *T. asthmatica* inhibited delayed hypersensitivity reaction to sheep red blood cells in rats when the alkaloid mixture was administered before and after immunization with these cells. The alkaloid mixture also inhibited contact sensitivity to dinitro-fluorobenzene in mice when given prior to or after contact sensitization. Lymphocytes taken from contact sensitized mice, when treated with tylophora alkaloid in vitro and transferred into naive syngeneic hosts, could suppress the transfer of delayed type hypersensitivity (DTH) response.

**Immunomodulator effect:** Con A induced proliferation of splenocytes was used as a model system to study the effect of the alkaloids on cellular immune responses. The alkaloid mixture was found to inhibit proliferation of splenocytes at higher concentrations and augment the same at lower concentrations. Both macrophages and T cells were found to be vulnerable to tylophora alkaloids. Inhibition of proliferation at higher concentrations of the alkaloid is due to inhibition of IL-2 production and activation of macrophages, which have a cytostatic effect.

**Clinical studies:** One such study randomly assigned 110 bronchial asthma patients to receive one *Tylophora asthmatica* leaf (150 mg of the leaf by weight) or a comparable placebo to be chewed and swallowed daily in the early morning for 6 d. At the end of 1 wk, 62% of the patients consuming the tylophora reported experiencing moderate to complete relief of their asthma symptoms compared to 28% in the placebo group. In a follow-up study, the alcoholic extract of crude tylophora leaves in 1 gram of glucose
had comparable effects to that of chewing the crude leaf, with 56% of the patients reporting moderate to complete improvement in asthmatic symptoms compared to 32% in the placebo group.

In a double-blind placebo-controlled crossover study of 195 individuals with asthma, participants showed significant improvement when given 40 mg of a *T. asthmatica* alcohol extract daily for 6 d as compared to the placebo. Surprisingly, the difference was even more marked months after use of the herb had been stopped. Similar long-lasting results were seen in two double-blind placebo-controlled studies involving over 200 individuals with asthma.

In another clinical trial, 30 patients with a diagnosis of bronchial asthma for at least 2 yr were assigned at random to one of two treatment groups consisting of 15 individuals each. One group received either 350 mg of tylophora leaf powder or placebo daily in the first week. In comparison, a second group of asthmatics were given a similar amount of the leaf for 7 d followed by an anti-asthmatic drug combination. Overall, the results of the study showed that the amount of oxygen in the lung increased in those using the leaf, but decreased in those using the placebo.

However, the designs of most of these studies are a bit convoluted, and various pieces of information are missing from the reports, making it difficult to evaluate the validity of these trials. A higher quality double-blind study that enrolled 135 individuals found no benefit from *T. asthmatica* in asthma. In another double-blind placebo-controlled study, *Tylophora asthmatica* produced a significant reduction in sneezing and nasal obstruction, and the improvement noted in ventilatory capacity lasted for nearly 10 d.

**Toxicology:** One report described dermatitis as toxic effect of the alkaloids from *T. asthmatica*. The alkaloids tylophorine and tylophorinine, are described as vesicant but no formal skin testing appears to have been reported in the literature. Administration of pure alkaloid of *T. asthmatica*, suspended in peanut oil and given in single doses (12–100 mg/kg) by gavage, to male rats caused inactivity, respiratory distress, salivation, nasal discharge and diarrhea. The oral LD50 value of the alkaloid was 35.32 mg/kg.

**References and further reading**


Chapter 25

Colchicine Containing Medicinal Herbs

25.1 Introduction

Discoroides in his book, De Materia Medica, described the use of the extract of genus *Colchicum* for the treatment of gout. In modern clinical practice, colchicine is prescribed in cases of gout and rheumatism not responding to standard medications. Gout is a clinical condition characterized by high-levels of uric acid in the blood resulting in arthritis.

Colchicine containing medicinal herbs is widely used in traditional systems of medicine including Ayurveda and Unani. In Ayurveda, Indian colchicum (*Colchicum autumnale* Linn.) is used in anti-gout prescriptions, *suranjana vati* (tablet preparation) and *suranjana velha* (confection preparation). Colchicine was official in the London Pharmacopoeia until 1639 and was reintroduced in 1778.

Colchicine (Fig. 5.5) is basically a water-soluble alkaloid, initially isolated from corms of Meadow saffron (*Colchicum luteum* Baker). In addition, colchicine has analgesic and anti-inflammatory activity which makes it ideal for anti-rheumatic therapy.

Colchicine has been also studied as an anticancer agent. Colchicine inhibits polymerization of microtubules by binding to tubulin. In addition to gout, colchicine is used in the treatment of psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, Becket’s syndrome, penile condylomata acuminata, cardiomyopathy, familial Mediterranean fever, secondary amyloidosis and scleroderma. Colchicine is toxic and a typical poisoning case mimics arsenic toxicity. Colchicine is known to cause leucopenia, dermatitis and alopecia and reported to be teratogenic in animal studies.
25.2 Medicinal herbs and colchicine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No</th>
<th>Name of the herb</th>
<th>% of colchicine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td><em>Colchicum autumnale</em> Linn.</td>
<td>(0.1 to 0.8% (fresh flowers) 1.8% (dried flowers), (0.2 to 0.8%) seeds and corm (0.4 to 0.6%).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><em>Colchicum luteum</em> Baker.</td>
<td>0.25% (corm) and 0.4% (seeds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><em>Gloriosa superba</em> Linn.</td>
<td>1.3% (tubers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><em>Iphigenia indica</em> (L.) Kunth</td>
<td>0.6-0.8 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><em>Sandersonia aurantiaca</em> Hook.</td>
<td>4.7%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Colchicum autumnale* Linn., commonly known as Autumn Crocus or Meadow Saffron, is native to Central and southeastern Europe and Africa. It has been introduced to Canada and the U.S. *Colchicum autumnale* is a small herbaceous perennial plant 10 to 40 cm high, flowering typically in the autumn after the leaves have disappeared. Leaves are lanceolate, dark green, shiny. They appear in the spring, and then die back before the flowers appear. Flowers: pink, purple or white flowers in groups of 1 to 6 are produced from an underground bulb.

All parts of the plant contain toxins. The greatest concentration of toxins is found in the seeds and the bulb. Colchicine is present in the flowers (0.1 to 0.8% in fresh flowers; up to 1.8% in dried flowers), in the seeds (0.2 to 0.8%) in the bulb (0.4 to 0.6%). The leaves contain very low amounts of colchicine. The other toxins present, which are closely related to colchicine, includes desacetylmethylcolchicine, desacetylthiocolchicine, colchicoside, demethyl desacetylcolchicine.

In traditional medicine, *C. autumnale* is classified as an alterative, aphrodisiac, carminative and laxative and used in gout, rheumatism and disorders of the liver and spleen.

*Colchicum luteum* Baker., commonly known as Yellow Autumn Crocus, Bitter Colchicum and Golden Collyrium, is found in East Asia-China to the Himalayas. It is an annual herb with stem-base below the ground, Flowers golden yellow, 1–2, on a very short stalk or scape among leaf-sheaths; fruits 2.5–3.8 cm long capsules with long recurved beaks, having numerous seeds; seeds brownish-white, globose or irregularly globular, 2–3 mm in diameter.

The herb contains alkaloids, including, colchicine, colchicine, demecoicine or colchamine, cornigerine, lutiene, luteidine and collutine N-oxide. Corm contains 0.25% and seeds contain 0.4% of colchicine. Colchicine is readily soluble in water and decomposes into colchicine. The corm also contains gallic acid, tannic acid, gum and starch. The poisoning of the plant is not unusual and comes through the confusion of the tuber
with an onion or preparation of the leaves as a salad. Poisoning has been reported even by the milk of goats and sheep who have eaten the plant. 

*Gloriosa superba* Linn., commonly known as Glory Lily, is another source of the alkaloid. It is a beautiful, herbaceous, tall, glabrous, branching leaf tip climber, about 1–3 m tall. Leaves alternate, opposite or tenately whorled, lanceolate, strongly nerved, nerves parallel, leaf-tip ending in tendril like spiral. Flowers large, showy, axillary, solitary on long pedicels, and nodding.

The plant contains alkaloids: colchicine corresponding to 1.3% (10), superbine and gloriosine. Superbine is toxic and allied to bitter principle of squill. 3-demethyl-N-formyl-N-deacetyl-b-lumicolchicine, 3-demethyl-g-lumicolchicine and 3-demethyl colchicines have been reported. Recently a glycoside (3-O-demethylcolchicine-3-O-alpha-D-glucopyranoside) has been isolated from the seeds.

Four fractions of *Gloriosa superba* L., i.e. hexane fraction, dichloromethane fraction 1, dichloromethane fraction 2, and methanol fraction, were investigated for colchicine-like activity using a mosquito cytogenetic assay. The results revealed that the latter three fractions yielded promisingly high colchicine-like activity, whereas the hexane fraction yielded very low activity compared with 1% colchicine in a 0.85% sodium chloride solution.

The clinical manifestations of colchicine toxicity include gastroenteritis, acute renal failure, cardio toxicity and hematological abnormalities. In one case, a young woman ingested 125 g of tubers containing 0.3% colchicine which is equivalent of 350 mg of colchicine. Within 2 h the patient was vomiting and became unconscious on the next day. Acute ascending polyneuropathy and dermatitis have been reported following ingestion of tubers of the plant. Massive generalized alopecia has been reported. Anti-spermatogenic activity of extracts has been reported.

In traditional medicine, *G. superba* is classified as acrid, anthelmintic, laxative and abortifacient. It is used in the treatment of chronic ulcers, leprosy, inflammation, hemorrhoids, skin diseases and intestinal worms. *G. rothchildiana* O Brien, *G.planti*, *G. lutea*, *G. casuariana* and *G. vuchuria* are also known to contain colchicine.

*Iphigenia indica* (L.) Kunth is found in the Himalayas, Nepal, India, Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Malaysia and Australia. It is an herb 20–40 cm high; stem simple or sparsely branched. Leaves mostly crowded along stem, linear or gradually tapering, flat or channeled, 5–20 cm long, 1.5–4.5 mm wide, glabrous. Inflorescence 1–4 flowered; pedicels erect, usually 5–20 mm long at anthesis; bracts 1–several per flower. It contains colchicine corresponding to 0.6–0.8%.
The seeds of *Iphigenia stellata* Blatt., indigenous to Maharastra (India) and is reported to contain the highest amount of colchicine. In addition, the plant contains colchicoside, 3-demethylcolchicine, 3-demethyl-N-deacetylcolchicine, multifloramine and kreyssiginine.

*Merendera persica* sensu Hook. *(Colchicum aitchisonii* (Hook. f.) E. Nasir, *Merendera aitchisonii* Hook. f.) is found throughout Afghanistan and Iran. It is known as sweet suranjana. The corm is ovoid; sheath dark reddish-brown, neck long. Leaves 2–6, appearing with the flowers, linear, acute, 2–5 cm long at the flowering stage, upto 12 cm at the fruiting stage. It is reported to contain colchicine (24). Various species of the genus *Androcymbium* including *A. gramineum*, *A. hierrense*, *A. palaestinum*, *A. psammophilum*, *A. rechingerii*, and *A. wyssianum* are reported to contain colchicine.

### 25.3 Ginkgo biloba Linn. and colchicine

*Ginkgo biloba* Linn. (Ginkgoaceae), has been used as peripheral vasodilator in traditional medicine. It is used in the treatment of tinnitus, dementia and intermittent claudication. Researchers identified a compound similar to colchicine in pooled placental blood. While tracing the origin of the compound, they examined blood samples of 24 women. Only five women showed the presence of colchicine and were consuming some herbal product (these were identified as Ginkgo and Echinacea products from local retail outlets). The ginkgo-based herbal products were found to contain significant amounts of colchicine. The authors of the study warned that consumption of ginkgo supplements by pregnant women may pose dangers to developing fetuses.

The findings about ginkgo were strongly criticized by several herbal experts and scientists. Some experts were of the view that the investigators misidentified a non-toxic ginkgo compound as colchicine. The ginkgo compound reportedly has a structure similar to that of colchicine and the researchers were not able to differentiate between the two. Further, a comprehensive review of the scientific data available on ginkgo never revealed the presence of colchicine in *Ginkgo biloba*.

**References and further reading**


Herbalism, Phytochemistry and Ethnopharmacology


Chapter 26

Lakshmana-Ayurvedic Drug of Controversial Origin

26.1 Introduction
Lakshmana is an important medicinal plant of Ayurveda, the ancient system of healing. Lakshmana is a type of kantkari, a medicinal plant widely used in Ayurveda in the treatment of respiratory diseases. Lakshmana has been described as a white variety of kantkari, making it a possible representative of the Natural Order Solanaceae. Kantkari is an ingredient of dashmula, the Ayurvedic anti-inflammatory. The drug is of great interest as it has been mentioned as a possible treatment of female infertility. Bhavamishra, an ancient Ayurvedic physician, also mentions kantkari for promoting conception in females.

26.2 Lakshmana in ancient Ayurvedic texts

Bhāvprakash Nighantu
Actions: Pungent, laxative, appetizer, light and hot in potency.
Therapeutics: Cough, asthma, fever, chronic rhinitis, myalgia, worm infestation and heart ailments. It pacifies vāta and kapha.

Raj Nighantu
Actions: Pungent, laxative, appetizer, light and hot in potency. It pacifies vāta and kapha.
Therapeutics: Loss of appetite and eye-ailments.

Dhanwantri Nighantu
The author has described laksmana as a variety of brahati.
Actions and therapeutics: Bitter, pacifies Vāta and Kapha and cures indigestion and cough.
26.3 Medicinal plants of Solanaceae in Ayurveda

Several medicinal plants of the Natural Order of Solanaceae have found application in Ayurvedic formulations. Kantkāri (Solanum xanthocarpum Schrad et Wendl., Solanum surattense Burm.f., Solanum virginianum L.), kakamaci (Solanum nigrum L.), brahati (Solanum indicum L.) and Solanum trilobatum L. are some important plants.

26.4 Kantkāri (Solanum xanthocarpum Schrad et Wendl.)

English name: Yellow-berried-night shade. It is distributed in India, Sri Lanka and Pakistan. It is prickly, a much-branched herb, usually spreading or diffused; young branches are densely covered with minute star-shaped hair, prickles are yellow, shining about 1.5 cm long. Leaves are upto 10 cm long, their midribs and other leaves with sharp, yellow prickles. Flowers are purple, about 2 cm long, a few together in small branches, opposite to leaves. Fruit are 1.5–2.0 cm, round yellow or pale with green veins.

Phytochemistry: It contains alkaloids (scopolamine, solanidine and solasonine), β-sitosterol and steroid saponin (disogenin).

Actions: Antitussive, bronchodilator, bitter, carminative and anodyne.

Therapeutics: S. xanthocarpum is primarily used in the treatment of chronic bronchitis and bronchial asthma. Taken with honey, tulsi (Ocimum sanctum), datura (Datura metal), and black pepper makes it effective in cases of bronchial asthma. Expressed juice of the berries is used in sore throat. Flowers and fruits are used to resolve burning sensation of the feet. Leaves are used to relieve pain locally.

Ethnopharmacology: Anti-nociceptive, antispermagogenic and hypotensive. Fruits and shoots have been reported to be antibacterial.

Clinical studies: Clinical efficacy of S. xanthocarpum was studied in bronchial asthma in a pilot study. S. xanthocarpum demonstrated anti-asthmatic effect in terms of various parameters of pulmonary function. However, the effect was less when compared to standard bronchodilators.

26.5 Possible representatives of lakshmana

26.5.1 Ipomoea muricata (L.) Jacq.(Convolvulaceae)

Common name: Purple moonflower. The seeds of Ipomoea muricata are largely imported into Bombay, from Iran, under the name of tukm-i-nil.

Distribution: Native to eastern India and Bangladesh.
Botany: Perennial vining climber to 30 feet. It is a rare climber, sporting unusual aerial rootless and white, funnel-shaped blossoms in the second year.

Phytochemistry: Work done in the Philippines has demonstrated the presence of indolizidine alkaloids in the seeds. Two resin glycosides and muricatins VII and VIII have been isolated from the seeds.

Actions: Aphrodisiac.

Therapeutics: The juice of this plant is used to destroy bedbugs, and the seeds are said to be identical in their medicinal properties with those of the official plant. Ipomoea muricata (L.) Jacq, locally known as 'Tonkin', has been used for generations by the Dominicans in the Philippines for medicinal purposes. The seeds, stems and leaves are said to be effective in treating several types of skin ailments such as chronic and gangrenous wounds, cuts and blisters due to burns.

Ethnopharmacology: Analgesic, antiseptic, antimicrobial and antifungal.

26.5.2 Cynoglossum lanceolatum Forssk. (Boraginaceae)

Mishra in his work on rare Ayurvedic drugs has indicated C. lanceolatum as a possible candidate for lakshmana.

Distribution: Common throughout parts of Africa and Asia. It is also distributed in Madagascar.

Botany: Annual or biennial herb, the taproot 1-8 mm in diam.; stems erect, to c. 1 m tall, with sparse to moderate, appressed to spreading pubescence. Basal leaves in an evident rosette or smaller plants apparently immediately erect and lacking a basal rosette. Inflorescences terminal, once to several times dichotomously branched cymes, the branches strigillose; flowers on pedicels 1–7 mm long, bisexual; sepals narrowly ovate. Fruits 4.5–5.5 mm broad; nutlets ovoid, 2–3 mm broad.

Phytochemistry: Pyrrolizidine alkaloids: cynaustraline and cynaustine.

26.5.3 Solanum ferox Linn. (Solanaceae)

Foundation for Revitalization of Local Health Traditions (FRLHT) has mentioned S. ferox as a possible candidate for lakshmana.

Syn: S. lasiocarpum Dunal, S. zeilanicum Blanco.

Common name: Tarambulo (The Philippines).

Distribution: The Philippines, North East India, Malaysia and South China.

Botany: S. ferox is a small weed, suberect, prickly, hairy herb 0.5 to 1.5 meters in height the leaves are ovate, 15 to 20 cm long, 12 to 23 cm wide,
lobed at the margins, and densely covered with stiff wooly hairs above and prickly spines on the nerves beneath; the lobes are triangular, and 2.5 to 4 cm deep. The flowers are borne on lateral racemes. Fruit is yellow, rounded, 2.5 to 3.5 cm in diameter, densely covered with needle-like hairs, and man-seeded.

**Phytochemistry:** Seeds contain fatty acids.

**Therapeutics:** In the Philippines, leaves of the plant are used as cataplasma for indolent swellings. The decoction is used in syphilis. Seeds are useful in toothache.

### 26.6 Further work

Proper identification of ancient drug *lakshmana* is a debatable topic. The drug has been mentioned as a cure for female infertility in ancient texts. Further, it is considered to be a type of *kantkari*. Disogenin has been reported from various Solanum species like *S. xanthocarpum* Schrad et Wendl. and *Solanum khasianum* C.B. Clarke. Fruits of these species are in high demand for production of progesterones of natural origin. These are prized drugs for curing conditions like infertility and habitual abortions (coherence with the ancient texts). *S. khasianum* has white flowers. Ancient texts have not mentioned the detailed morphology of *lakshmana*, but presence of white flowers have been mentoined. Work on *S. khasianum* as a possible representative of *lakshmana* is warranted.

### References and further reading


Chapter 27

Antidiabetic potential of
Pterocarpus marsupium

27.1 Introduction

P. marsupium, or the Indian Kino Tree is a medium to large, deciduous tree that can grow up to 30 meters tall. It is native to India, Nepal, and Sri Lanka. In India it is found in parts of the Western Ghats in the Karnataka-Kerala region. Pterocarpus marsupium is one of the most highly valued trees of Eastern herbal medicine, renowned for its blood sugar-lowering effect. It is commonly known as vijaysar and was recommended as early as 1000 BC by Sushruta for the treatment of diabetes. In traditional practice, diabetic patients were given water which had been allowed to sit overnight in a goblet made from P. marsupium heartwood.

27.2 Phytochemistry: P. marsupium is a rich source of polyphenolic compounds including homopterocarpin (Fig. 27.1) and pterocarpin (Fig. 27.2).

Fig. 27.1 Structure of Homopterocarpin.

Fig. 27.2 Structure of Pterocarpin.
The other key compounds include the diaryl propane derivative, propterol (Fig. 27.3); the stilbene, pterostilbene (Fig. 27.4); the hydrochalcone, pterosupin (Fig. 27.5); the benzofuranone, marsupsin (Fig. 27.6); the flavanoid, liquiritigenin and the catechin, (-)-epicatechin. Propterol B has been characterized from a heartwood extract.

Propterol, pterostilbene, pterosupin and marsupsin are the main components of heartwood, while (-)-epicatechin is found in the bark. The phenolics, marsupsin, pterosupin, and, pterostilbene have been
Antidiabetic Potential of Pterocarpus marsupium

Identified as the blood sugar lowering components of heartwood, while (-)-epicatechin has been identified as the blood sugar lowering compound in the bark.

From the petrol extract of *P. marsupium*, a new sesquiterpene alcohol; elin-4(15)-en-1β,11-diol, β-eudesmol, erythrodiol-3-monoacetate and pterostilbene have been reported.

A novel isoflavonoid glycol, marsupol has been characterized from heartwood. 2-hydroxy-2-benzylcoumaranone, carpusin, has been an extractive of heartwood. Pterocarpaside, an isoaurone C-glucoside has been reported from aqueous extract of heartwood.

27.3 Ethnopharmacology

1. A flavonoid fraction extracted from the bark of *P. marsupium* was studied for the hypoglycemic activity on normal and alloxanized albino rats. The flavonoid fraction did not show a consistent effect on normal blood sugar levels but it effectively reversed the alloxan-induced changes in the blood sugar level and the beta-cell population in the pancreas. The flavonoid fraction also showed a protective effect when it was given prior to alloxan administration.

2. Glucose levels in rats with hyperglycemia induced by streptozotocin were determined after i.p. administration of marsupin, pterosupin, and pterostilbene. Marsupin and pterostilbene significantly lowered the blood glucose level of hyperglycemic rats, and the effect was comparable to that of metformin.

3. Protective effects of the methanolic extract of *P. marsupium* heartwood were evaluated on NIDDM-induced rat gastric ulceration and mucosal offensive and defensive factors. NIDDM was produced in 5-d-old rat puppies by administering streptozotocin (70 mg/kg, i.p). The animals showing blood glucose level > 140 mg/dl after 12 wk of STZ administration were considered as NIDDM positive rats. *P. marsupium* (750 mg/kg) decreased the blood sugar level both in normal and NIDDM rats.

4. A study investigated the influence of methanolic extract of *P. marsupium* and isolated 7-O-α-L-rhamnopyranosyl oxy-4′-methoxy-5-hydroxy isoflavone on a battery of cellular targets Glut-4, PPARγ and PI3 kinase. The significant glucose uptake showed by *P. marsupium* crude and pure was comparable with insulin and rosiglitazone. Elevation of Glut-4 and PPARγ gene expression in parallel with glucose uptake supported the *in vitro* glucose uptake activity of *P. marsupium* methanolic extract and isoflavone. PI3 kinase plays an important role in glucose transport and activated by *Pterocarpus marsupium* methanolic extract but not the isolated pure isoflavone.
5. The antidiabetic activity of various subfractions of the alcohol extract of the bark of *P. marsupium* was evaluated in alloxan-induced diabetic rats. The results indicated that *P. marsupium* can control the diabetes related metabolic alterations apart from controlling the glucose levels. Among the fractions tested the butanol subfraction was found to be more active in comparison with other subfractions.

27.4 Clinical trials

1. A small clinical trial was carried out with 10 patients, who were given 200 ml of water, which was stored in a glass overnight, twice a day for one month, taken after lunch, whereas water stored for the whole day was drunk after dinner. There was an encouraging reduction of blood sugar from the second week of treatment and this hypo-glycemic activity continued as long as heartwood was given.

2. In clinical trials with human subjects, *P. marsupium* has shown remarkable anti-diabetic action. In two clinical trials, diabetic patients were given no treatment other than administration of an extract of *P. marsupium*. The first study evaluated both newly-diagnosed and untreated type 2 diabetics. Ninety seven patients were given varying doses of an extract of *P. marsupium* ranging from 2 to 4 gms a day over a period of 12 wk. At the end of the study period, parameters were evaluated for all the patients. The results showed that 67% of the patients were able to reduce and maintain glucose levels by using various amounts of *P. marsupium* extract. Of this group, 73% showed stabilized glucose levels at a daily dose of 2 gms of Pterocarpus extract, whereas 16% required 3 gms a day and 10% stabilized at 4 gms per day.

3. In another study using human subjects, 22 diabetics, mostly with type 2 diabetes, ranging in age from 29 to 70 yr were given a decoction of either 2 or 4 ounces three times daily made from 36 or 72 gms of dry bark of *Pterocarpus marsupium* respectively for 7 d.

Four parameters were monitored during this study: 1) fasting blood sugar, 2) glucose tolerance, 3) urine sugar content and 4) diabetic symptoms. The subjects were separated into two groups; Group A with 10 participants and Group B with 12. Group A received a decoction of 2 ounces 3 times a day, while Group B received 4 ounces 3 times a day.

Among the subjects in Group A, 3 out of 10 patients showed improvement in only one area of testing; glucose tolerance. In contrast, 9 of the 12 patients in Group B experienced benefits in all tested areas. These patients showed significant improvement in glucose tolerance and glucose uremia, and also a decrease in fasting blood sugar and amelioration of some diabetic symptoms. No undesirable side effects were noted during the course of the study.
Further reading


